

И.Н. ВЕРЕЩАГИНА
Т.А. ПРИТЫКИНА

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

3 класс

УЧЕБНИК

**для общеобразовательных
учреждений и школ
с углублённым изучением
английского языка**

В двух частях

Часть 2

Рекомендовано
Министерством образования и науки
Российской Федерации

8-е издание

Москва «ПРОСВЕЩЕНИЕ» 2009

Дорогие девочки и мальчики!

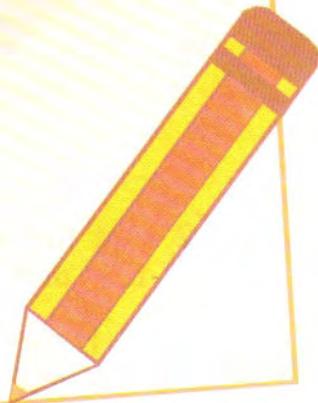
Этот учебник состоит из двух частей. Это вторая часть. По ней вы продолжите изучать английский язык.

Так же как и раньше, обязательно слушайте кассеты, выполняйте задания по рабочей тетради и книге для чтения.

Грамматический справочник в конце учебника поможет вам при изучении грамматики.

Желаем успеха!

Авторы



45. The Forty-fifth Lesson

Lesson Forty-five



Let Us Learn

① Play a “Memory Game”. Look at the pictures for a minute, then close the book, name all the animals you saw and say:

- which animal is the first (second, ...);
- which animal has got a long (short) tail;
- which animal has got a long (short) neck.



② Put the sentences in the correct order to make the conversation and role-play it.

- 1 – Have you got a pet?
- 9 – What does your father teach Rover to do?
- 6 – His name is Rover.
- 3 – What is it?

Pets and Other Animals

- 8 - We all do. Mum feeds¹ him. I take him for a walk and Dad teaches him.
5 - What's his name?
10 - Dad teaches him to run after a ball and bring it back to him.
4 - Who looks after Rover?
11 - What a clever pet you've got! What colour is your dog?
8 - Yes, I have.
12 - He's black. He has got a long neck and a short tail.
13 - Oh, how I'd love to have a pet, too!
7 - It's a dog.

3 Play a "Number Game". Pretend one of you is Rita and the other is Mary.

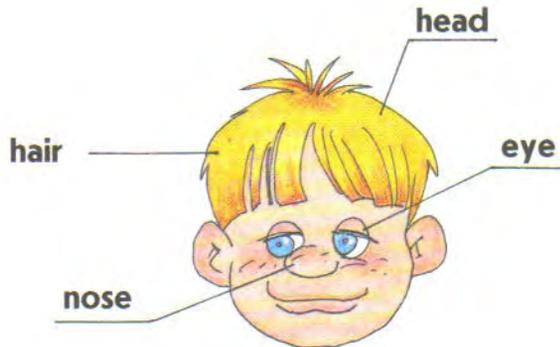
Example

Rita: How much is eight and eleven?

Mary: Eight and eleven is nineteen.

4 Learn to pronounce and use the new words, 43.

5 Look at the picture. Read and learn the new words.



6 Find the rhyming twins.

buy — nose
these — eye
bear — hair
head — please
rose — red

¹ feed [fi:d] — кормить



Let Us Read and Learn

- 7 Listen to the game song “Alouette”,  44. Read and learn three parts of it.

ALOUETTE

- I. Alouette, little Alouette,
Alouette, play the game with me.
Put your finger¹ on your head,
Put your finger on your head,
On your head, on your head,
Don't forget,² Alouette, oh!
- II. Alouette, little Alouette,
Alouette, play the game with me.
Put your finger on your eye,
Put your finger on your eye,
On your eye, on your eye,
On your head, on your head,
Don't forget, Alouette, oh!
- III. Alouette, little Alouette,
Alouette, play the game with me.
Put your finger on your nose,
Put your finger on your nose,
On your nose, on your nose,
On your eye, on your eye,
On your head, on your head,
Don't forget, Alouette, oh!



Let Us Read

- 8 Read the first part of the story “At the Zoo” and say why the zookeeper³ didn't let Ted give a banana to the monkeys.

¹ finger ['fɪŋgə] – палец

² don't forget ['dɒnt fə'get] – не забудь

³ zookeeper [ˌzuː'ki:pə] – one who looks after animals in a zoo

Pets and Other Animals

AT THE ZOO

I

Last week Mr Smith and his son Ted went to the Zoo. They saw a lot of animals there: tigers and lions, elephants and monkeys, giraffes and crocodiles, wolves and foxes, white bears and brown bears, horses and hares. They saw a lot of different birds, too.

Ted watched the monkeys. They were so funny. They jumped, ran, played and made funny faces.

Ted wanted to give a banana to the monkeys but the zookeeper said:

“Don’t do it, please! They are not hungry or thirsty now. I look after them and I know when and what to give them to eat and to drink.”

“Oh, I’m sorry,” said Ted. “I’m never going to do it again.”

Then the zookeeper invited Ted and his father to have a look at a tiger cub.¹



9 Find and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the picture.

¹ cub [kʌb] – the animal’s child



Let Us Talk

- 10 Look at the picture and describe the animals.



- 11 Now you think of any funny mixed-up animal. Describe it and let your classmates guess what animal it is.



Let Us Write

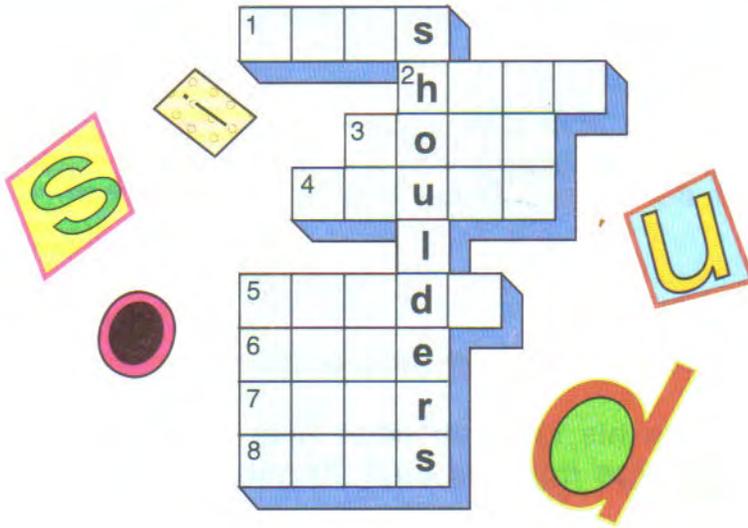
- 12 Draw the face of a funny fellow and write what it is what (see Exercise 5).
- 13 Learn to write these words.

head, hair, eye, nose



Puzzle Time

- 14 Complete the crossword.



46. The Forty-sixth Lesson

Lesson Forty-six

Let Us Learn



- ① What are you (is your friend) good at? Say what you (your friend) *can do well* (*can't do well*).

Examples  *My friend can play chess well.*
I can't play chess well.

REMEMBER

⊕

I
He
She
We
You
They

must read every day.

Must

⊖

I
he
she
we
you
they

write every day?



I
He
She
We
You
They

must not (mustn't) eat too much ice cream.

- ② Mr Smith tells his children what they *must* do and what they *mustn't* do. What does he say? Pretend you are Mr Smith and say it for him.



Mr Smith

Mary,
Bob

you

must
mustn't

get up too late.
eat a lot of sweets.
help your mother about the house.
come to school in time.
be late for school.
look after your little sister.
get up.
eat too much ice cream.
give sweets to your pet.
take your pet for a walk.
wash your hands before you eat.

Pets and Other Animals

- 3 Parents and teachers often tell children what they must do first. What do they say?

Example

Mother: do homework/go for a walk.

Mother: You must do your homework before you go for a walk.

Mother: wash hands/eat.

Granny: wash hands and face/go to bed.

Teacher: think/speak.

Grandfather: say goodnight/go to bed.

Father: do homework/play.

Teacher: think/write.

- 4 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  45.

- 5 Try and read the new words.

pet – leg

neck – left

night – right

- 6 Choose and read the words: a) that go with the sound [e]; b) that don't go with the sound [ai].

1) mouth, ear, leg, hair, head, eye, must, pet, wolves, clever, teach, tail, neck, short, left, present, grow, send

2) right, nose, lion, teach, long, look after, only, invite, write, wrote, nine, visit, party, holiday, open

Let Us Read and Learn



- 7 Listen, read and learn,  46.

I LOVE MY DOG

I've got a dog,
His name is Jack.
His head is white,
His nose is black.

I take him out
Every day.
Such¹ fun we have!
We run and play.

Such clever tricks
My dog can do.
I love my dog!
He loves me too!



- 8 Listen to the song "I Found² a Cow",  47. Read and learn it.

 *I FOUND A COW* 

I found a cow!
How?
I found a bear!
Where?
I found a hen!
When?
I found a bear!
I found a hen!
I found a cow!
Wow!

 Let Us Read

- 9 Read the second part of the story "At the Zoo" and say how the zookeeper takes care of the tiger cub.

AT THE ZOO

II

Ted: Oh, what a nice little tiger!

Zookeeper: It's a tiger cub. It's time to give him his milk.

Ted: Hasn't the tiger cub got a mother?

¹ such [sʌtʃ] – такой

² found [faʊnd] – нашел

Pets and Other Animals

Zookeeper: He's got a mother. But his mother hasn't got any milk.

Ted: So now you're the cub's mother.

Zookeeper: Well, I am! I look after him. I give him milk six to eight times a day – he is very little.

Ted: And how do you feed him?

Zookeeper: I warm¹ some cow's milk and give it to him in a bottle.²

Ted: Does he like it?

Zookeeper: Yes, he does. He always wants more. Look at him now.

Ted: He's beautiful,³ isn't he? What a nice pet!

Zookeeper: A pet! He isn't a pet. He must go back to his mother and live at the Zoo with the other tigers.

Ted: Have you got any other baby ['beɪbɪ] animals at the Zoo?

Zookeeper: Yes, we've got lots. And they all take a lot of my time.

Father: Oh, excuse us, please. We've taken⁴ a lot of your time too. Thank you very much.

Ted: Yes, thank you very, very much. Goodbye!

Zookeeper: Goodbye. Come and see the animals some other day.



¹ warm [wɔ:m] – подогревать

² bottle ['bɒtl] – бутылочка

³ beautiful ['bjʊ:tɪfʊl] – красивый

⁴ We've taken ['wi:v 'teɪkn] – Мы заняли

10 Read the joke.

Teacher: What animal has got four legs?

Pupil: Two hens.



Let Us Talk

11 Betty was at the Zoo last week. Alf wants to know about her visit there and asks her these questions. Pretend one of you is Alf, the other is Betty. Answer Alf's questions for Betty and role-play the dialogue.



Alf

- When did you go to the Zoo?
- Who did you go to the Zoo with?
- What animals did you see there?
- Which animals did you watch?
- Did you feed the animals?
- What did you give them?
- Did you see a zookeeper there?
- Did the zookeeper let you feed the animals?
- Did you see big animals?
- Did you see a baby-elephant?
- What animals are funny to watch? And why?
- What animals can swim?
- What animals do you think are clever?
- What animals have got long tails? Short necks?
- You had a good time at the Zoo, didn't you?
- When did you come home?
- Would you like to go to the Zoo again?



Betty

Let Us Write

12 Make up and write not less than 6 sentences (see Exercise 2).

13 Learn to write these words.

must, left, right, leg

Puzzle Time



- 14 How many words that begin with the letter **C** do you remember? Write them down. Who is the champion?

47. The Forty-seventh **Lesson**
Lesson Forty-seven

Listening
Comprehension
Lesson.  48

48. The Forty-eighth **Lesson**
Lesson Forty-eight

Optional

49. The Forty-ninth **Lesson**
Lesson Forty-nine

Lesson 9 for
Home Reading

Text "The Story of the Three Goats", part I

50. The Fiftieth **Lesson**
Lesson Fifty

Optional

51. The Fifty-first **Lesson**
Lesson Fifty-one

Let Us Learn



- 1 Say what you *must* (*mustn't*) do. You may use the following:

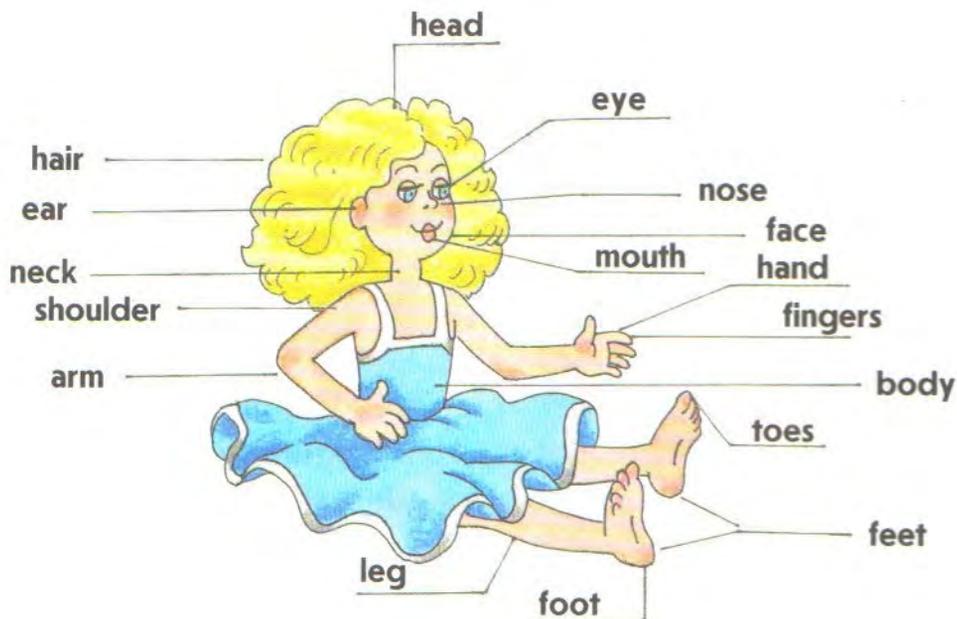
help your mother about the house; go shopping; get up too late; look after your pet; eat too much ice cream; come to school on time; be late for school; take your dog for a walk; feed your pet; watch TV too late; do exercises every day; wash your hands before you eat; go to bed too late ...

- 2 Make sure that you remember how to say numbers in words.

55, 32, 48, 69, 66, 100, 95, 81, 17, 74, 20, 25, 11, 14, 13, 12

③ Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  49.

④ This doll can help you to learn the names of the parts of the body. Read and remember.



⑤ Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[ɒ] not, what, wash, shop, shopping, long, porridge, coffee, **body**, a long body, a short body. – What animal has got a long body? – I think a crocodile has got a long body.

[ɑ:] glass, last, father, party, are, **arm**, an arm – arms, his arm, her arm, their arms, my left arm, my right arm. I've got two arms: this is my left arm and this is my right arm.

[ɪ] in, his, this, ill, six, skip, live, kitten, swim, bring, different, visit, fish, pity, little, sister, **finger**, a finger – fingers. I've got ten fingers – five on my right hand and five on my left hand.

[ʊ] put, good, wolf, look, foot, **a foot** – **feet**, my right foot, my left foot. I've got two feet: this is my right foot and this is my left foot.

[əʊ] no, so, know, only, grow, open, go, nose, **toe**, a toe – toes. – How many toes have you got? – I've got ten toes – five on my

Pets and Other Animals

left foot and five on my right foot. We've got ten fingers on our hands and ten toes on our feet.

[əʊ] **shoulder**, a shoulder – shoulders. This is my right shoulder and this is my left shoulder. Oh, look at that man's shoulders! – Do you know the names of all the parts of the body? – Yes, I do. They are: a head, a face, hair, eyes, a nose, a mouth, ears, a neck, shoulders, arms, hands, fingers, legs, feet, toes.

Let Us Read and Learn



⑥ Listen, read and learn,  50.

I MUST

I mustn't say "I can't".

I mustn't say "I won't".¹

I mustn't say "I'm not".

I mustn't say "I don't".

I must say "I will".²

I must say "I am".

I must say "I do".

I must say "I can".

Let Us Read



⑦ Read the text and say what's the main idea of it.

GASTON

Once there lived³ a little Elephant. His name was Gaston. His mother and father worked from morning till⁴ late at night as all the elephants usually did. But Gaston didn't like to work. He liked to play and that was what he did all day long.

¹ I won't [wəʊnt] – не буду

² I will [wɪl] – буду

³ once there lived ['wʌns ðeə 'lɪvd] – жил-был

⁴ from ... till [frəm ... tɪl] – от ... до

One morning Gaston's mother said, "My dear, it's time for you to work, too."

As Gaston didn't want to work, he ran away. He had a very good time: he ran, jumped and played games. In the evening he was very hungry. It was his mother who usually gave him food to eat. But there was no mother with him there. Who could help him?



Then Gaston had an idea. He went to the Lion and said: "Mr Lion, I'm so hungry. Would you give me some bananas to eat?" "All right!" said the Lion. "But you must work first. Then you can get your supper."



The little Elephant did want to have his supper, but he didn't want to work! So he ran away.

Pets and Other Animals

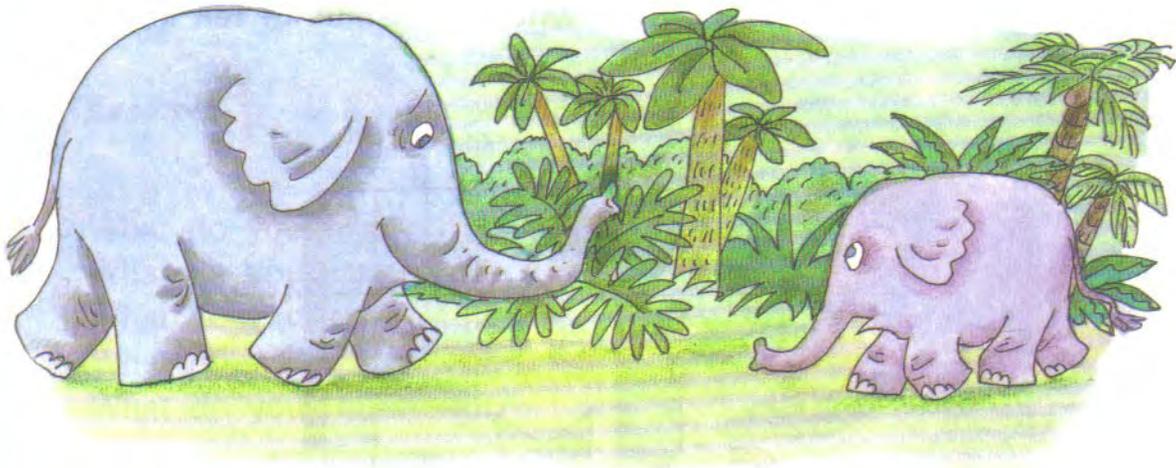
Then he saw the Tiger. He asked the Tiger to give him some apples to eat. "OK," said the Tiger, "but you must work first." And Gaston ran away.

He asked a lot of animals to give him something to eat. But they all asked him to work first.



So the hungry Elephant ran back home to his parents.

When he saw his mother, he said, "Dear Mum! I'm so sorry!.. Now I know that if I want to have something to eat I must work."



- 8 Choose and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the pictures.



Let Us Talk

- 9 What is your idea about doing right and wrong things? Say what you *must* and *mustn't* do.



Let Us Write

- 10 They are the right things to do, aren't they? So agree with the statements.

Examples

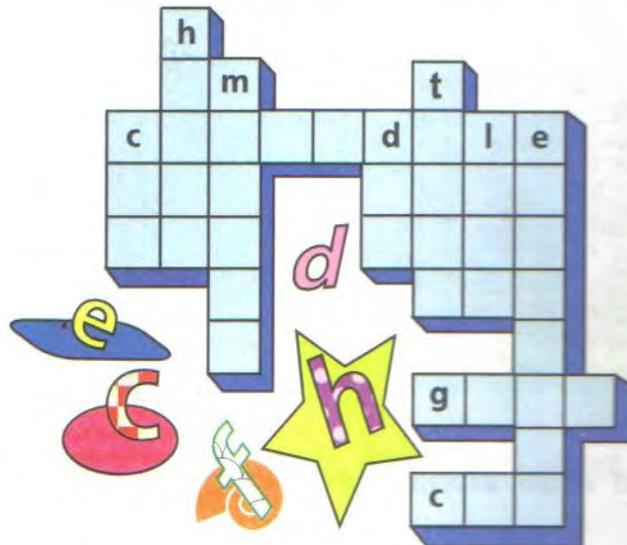
- We must eat three or four times a day.
- Yes, we must eat three or four times a day.
- Children mustn't put their toys in the wrong places.
- No, children mustn't put their toys in the wrong places.

1. We must eat the right food. 2. Boys and girls must go for a walk every day. 3. Pupils mustn't be late for school. 4. You mustn't watch TV every day. 5. We must help our parents. 6. You mustn't go to bed too late.



Puzzle Time

- 11 To solve the puzzle you must write the names of ten animals.



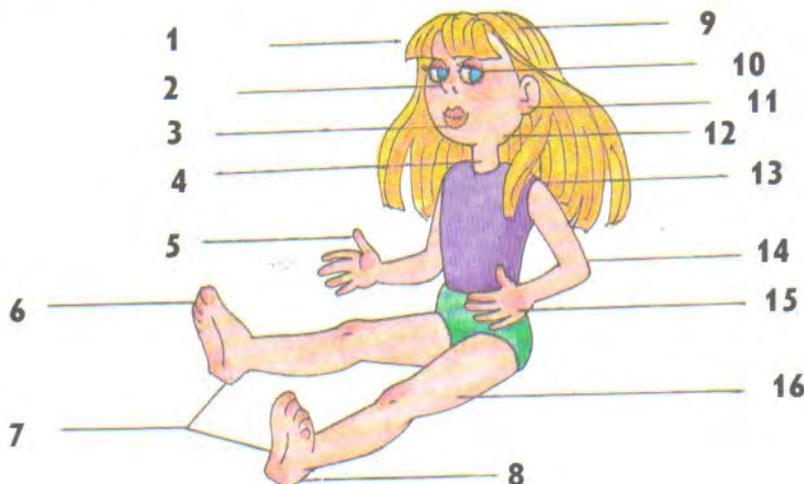
52. The Fifty-second Lesson

Lesson Fifty-two

Let Us Learn



- ① Do you remember the names of the parts of the body? Name them, please.



- ② Pretend you've got a little sister (brother). You ask her (him) these questions. Let her (him) answer them. Role-play the dialogue.

Example ▶ – What do you hear¹ with?
– I hear with my ears.

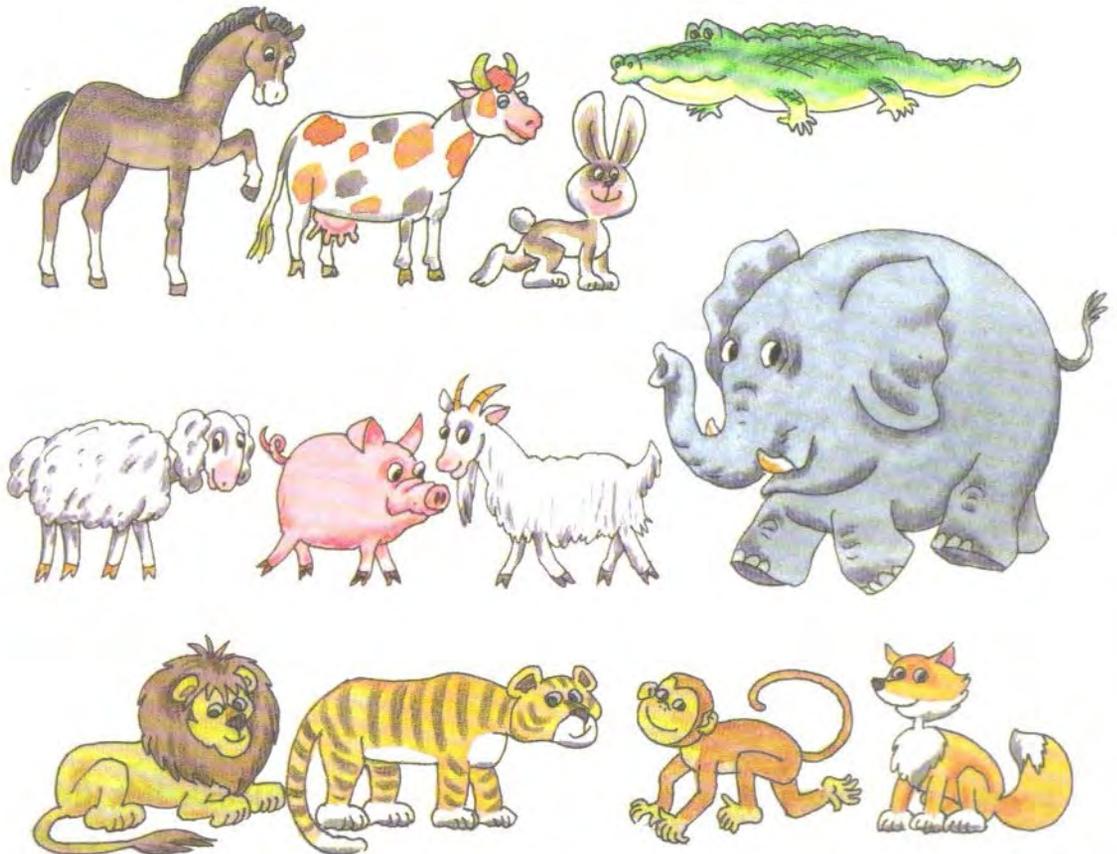
What do you see with?
What do you eat with?
What do you walk with?
What do you write with?
What do you think with?

- ③ Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  51.

¹ hear [hiə] – слышать

4 Look at the pictures and name domestic and wild animals.

Example ▶ A cow is a ... animal.



Let Us Read and Learn

5 Listen, read and learn,  52.

WHAT DO WE DO WITH ...?

We smell¹ with our nose,
We see with our eyes,
We eat with our mouth
Tasty puddings and pies.²

¹ smell [smel] – нюхать

² pie [paɪ] – пирог

Pets and Other Animals

With legs and feet we walk,
With lips¹ and tongue² we talk,
And with our ears
We can hear.

- 6 Listen to the action song “Head and Shoulders”,  53. Read and learn to sing it.

HEAD AND SHOULDERS

Head and shoulders,
Knees³ and toes,
Knees and toes.
Head and shoulders,
Knees and toes,
Knees and toes.
And eyes and ears,
And mouth and nose.
Head and shoulders,
Knees and toes,
Knees and toes.
Arms and legs,
And feet and hands,
Feet and hands.
Arms and legs,
And feet and hands.
Feet and hands.
And eyes and ears,
And mouth and nose.
Head and shoulders
Knees and toes,
Knees and toes.

¹ lip [lɪp] – губа

² tongue [tʌŋ] – язык

³ knee [ni:] – колено



Let Us Read

- 7 Use the right word for each gap and read the text.

This is my doll. Her name is Polly. She's a big She's got big blue ..., little ears, a short ... and a little red Her ... is long and yellow.



She's got two arms: this is her right ... and this is her ... arm. She's got ten ...: five on her right hand and five on her Her fingers are She's got long legs, little ... and ... little toes: five on her ... foot and ... on her

My doll is very She can do many things: with her ... she can eat tasty things; with her ... and feet she walks; with her tongue and lips she And with her ... she can hear me. I say: "Polly, dear!" and my doll says: "Ma-ma."

I think my doll is very nice and I love my doll.

- 8 Read the text and say why the woman ran away.

WHY DID SHE RUN AWAY?

Yesterday Rover came to the Zoo to visit his friends. Suddenly¹ he saw a new animal. It was yellow, brown and black. It had a little head, long legs, a long tail and a very, very long neck!

Rover came up to the animal and said:

"Hello, ... Excuse me, I don't know your name."

"That's all right. My name is Blaze."

"Who are you? I didn't see you here last month."

"I'm a giraffe. I lived in Africa. But now I live here, at the Zoo. I like it here. Children and their parents often come to see me. They always bring me a lot of things to eat: fruit and vegetables, sweets and cookies and many other tasty things."

"Do you eat birds or animals?"

¹ suddenly ['sʌdnli] – вдруг

Pets and Other Animals

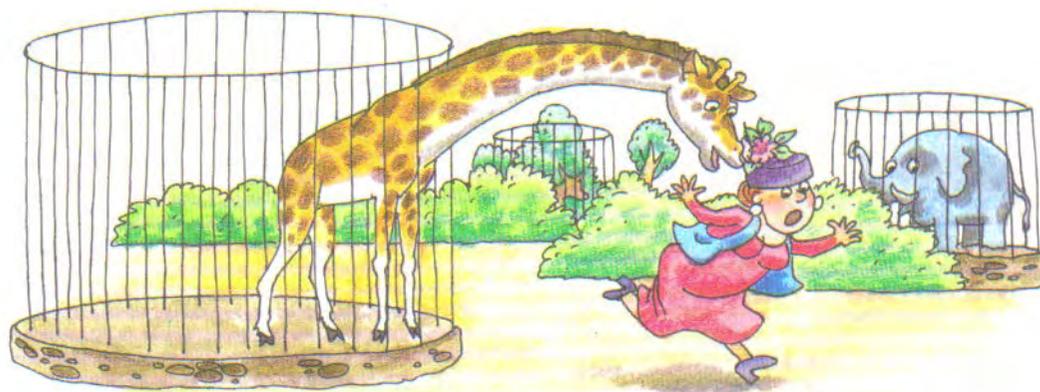
“Oh, no, I don’t. Why are you looking at my neck? You don’t like it, do you?”

“Well, I do! But why is it so long?”

“Because¹ I eat leaves from the trees. My long neck helps me do it.”

“Oh, I see.”

“I like to eat grass, too. You know, one day a woman came to look at me. I saw nice green grass on her hat.² I thought she wanted to give it to me to eat.



“Of course I thanked her and ate some grass. I didn’t like it! It wasn’t tasty at all! And do you know what the woman did? She ran away! I don’t know why! Can you tell me why she ran away?”

9 Arrange the sentences in a logical order according to the text.

The giraffe didn’t like the grass on the woman’s hat.

Rover came to the Zoo to visit his friends.

One day a woman came to the Zoo.

He saw a new animal.

The giraffe liked living at the Zoo.

The woman ran away.

The giraffe’s neck helps him get food.

¹ because [bɪˈkɒz] – потому что

² hat [hæt] – шляпа



Let Us Talk

- 10 Now give a short summary of the tale. Try to make it as short as you can: the shorter – the better. Who is the champion?
- 11 Make a doll and describe it (Exercise 7 can help you).



Let Us Write

- 12 Make sure you know how to write the names of the parts of the body. Copy and fill in the chart (Exercise 1 can help you).

HEAD
BODY

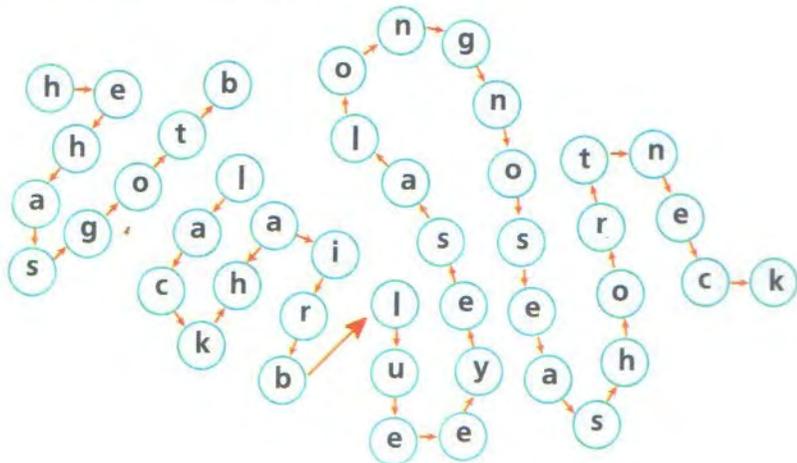
- 13 Do Exercise 11 in written form.
- 14 Learn to write these words.

body, foot (feet), arm, finger, toe, shoulder



Puzzle Time

- 15 Read the secret message.



53. The Fifty-third Lesson

Lesson Fifty-three

Let Us Learn



REMEMBER

long – longer – (the) longest
short – shorter – (the) shortest
old – older – (the) oldest
new – newer – (the) newest

clever – cleverer – (the) cleverest
big – bigger – (the) biggest
funny – funnier – (the) funniest
tasty – tastier – (the) tastiest

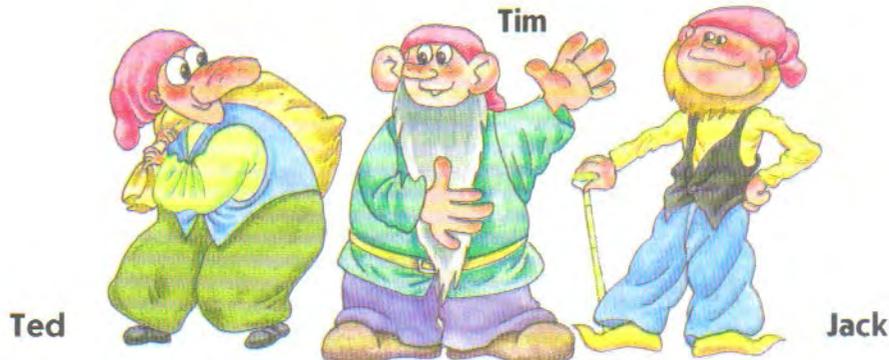
(see part 2, p. 146–147)

1 Agree or disagree.

The elephant is the biggest animal.
The biggest cat is the tiger.
The giraffe's neck is shorter than the bear's.
The monkey's tail is longer than the cat's.
Dogs are cleverer than cats.
Bananas are tastier than apples.
The giraffe has got the longest neck.
Cats are funnier than monkeys.

2 Compare these funny fellows.

Examples ▶ *Jack's ears are bigger than Ted's.*
Tim's ears are the biggest.



③ Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  54.

④ Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

green – **sheep**

[aɪ] wife, write, right, child – **wild**, a wild animal – wild animals. What wild animals do you know? – Is the monkey a wild animal? – Yes, the monkey is a wild animal.

[e] leg, left, neck, America, **domestic**, a domestic animal – domestic animals. – What domestic animals do you know? – I know that the cow and the horse are domestic animals. The pig and the sheep are domestic animals, too.

[eɪ] made, tasty, stadium, **favourite**, my favourite book, my favourite sport. – What is your favourite English book? – My favourite English book is “Pinocchio”. The dog is the favourite pet with the English.

[æ] hand, drank, Africa, animal, **hamster**, a hamster – hamsters. – Can a hamster be a pet? – Yes, many boys and girls keep hamsters as pets at home.

parrot, a parrot – parrots, a nice parrot, a clever parrot, a blue and green parrot. A lot of families keep parrots as pets at home. – Have you got a parrot? – Yes. – Can your parrot talk? – Yes, my parrot can talk.

[ɔ:] four, walk, always, daughter, for, **tortoise**, a tortoise – tortoises, a big tortoise, a little tortoise. – Who keeps a tortoise as a pet at home? – I do. – What does your tortoise eat? – My tortoise eats grass, leaves, fruit and vegetables.

[ju:] you, new, pupil, **beautiful**, a beautiful woman, a beautiful child, a beautiful girl. I think my cat is beautiful. My aunt has got beautiful eyes.

⑤ Look at the pictures (p. 29) and say what animal you'd like to keep as a pet.

Example

 *I'd like to keep a cat as a pet.*

Pets and Other Animals



Let Us Read and Learn



- ⑥ Listen to the song "Fingers",  55. Read and learn it.

FINGERS

How many fingers have I got?
Five on my right hand.
Five on my left hand.
How many fingers have I got?

- ⑦ Here are two poems. Listen to them,  56. Read them, choose the one you like best of all and learn it by heart.

WHAT CAN'T YOU DO WITHOUT ...?

Without your tongue
You cannot talk.
Without your feet
You cannot walk.

Without your eyes
You cannot see.
Without your heart¹
You cannot be.

ONLY ONE HEART

I've got two legs
With which I walk.
I've got a tongue
With which I talk.
I've got two eyes
With which I see.
I've got one heart
To live and be.



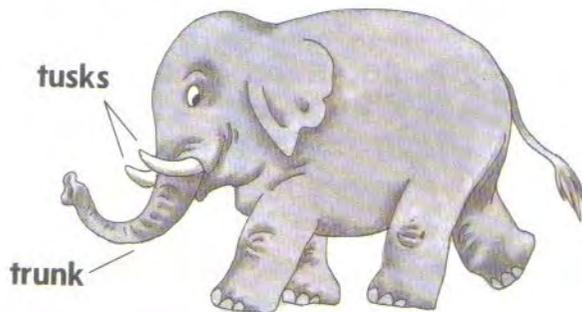
Let Us Read

- 8 Read and say if you've got new information about elephants.

THE ELEPHANT

Elephants are the biggest four-legged animals. They are grey and sometimes white. They haven't got hair. Elephants come from Africa and Asia.²

African elephants have got very big ears and Asia elephants have got little ears.



Elephants have got a very long nose – a trunk [trʌŋk] and two long white teeth – tusks [tʌskz].

Elephants eat a lot of food and drink a lot of water. They eat leaves, grass, and fruit.

¹ heart [hɑ:t] – сердце

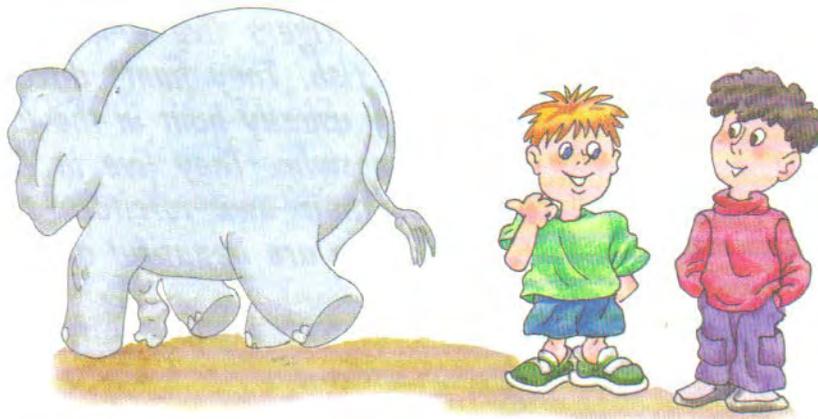
² Asia ['eɪʃə] – Азия

Pets and Other Animals

Elephants can swim – they are very good swimmers. Elephants love water.

When the elephant sleeps,¹ it usually stands. And as you know elephants help man work.

9 Read the joke.



Bob: Dick, this elephant's got five legs!

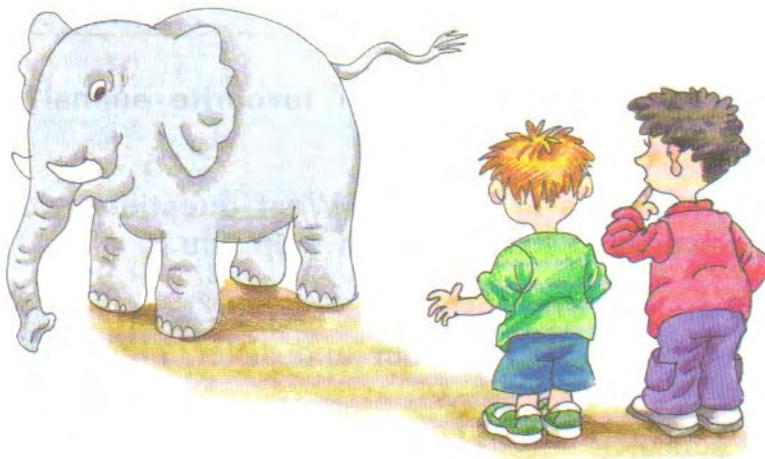
Dick: Which elephant?!

Bob: The big one!

Dick: No, it hasn't. It's got four legs.

Bob: Look! One ... two ... three ... four ... five!

Dick: That isn't a leg! It's a trunk!



¹ sleep [sli:p] – спать

- 10 Billy Kay loves animals and knows a lot about them. This is what he wrote about tigers.



My favourite animals are tigers. They are orange, black and white. Tigers have got big bodies, long tails and big teeth. Baby-tigers stay¹ with their mothers for two years. Tigers live alone.² They eat meat and fish. They hunt³ different animals. They usually hunt in the long grass. Tigers can swim. They live in Asia. They have got their own territory to live in. I think tigers are beautiful animals.

Billy Kay



Let Us Talk

- 11 Now you know what Billy's favourite animal is. And what is yours?
- 12 What pet would you like to keep at home and why?
- 13 Draw the picture of a funny fellow and describe it.



Let Us Write

- 14 What can you write about your favourite animal? (See Exercise 10.)
- 15 Last week Bill was in the Zoo. What questions would you ask him? The words in brackets can help you.

Bill went to the Zoo last week. (*When?*)

He went there with his father and sister. (*With whom?*)

¹ stay [steɪ] – остаются

² alone [ə'ləʊn] – в одиночку

³ hunt [hʌnt] – охотиться

Pets and Other Animals

They saw a giraffe there. (*Whom?*)

Bill gave the giraffe a banana. (*What?*)

The giraffe liked the banana very much. (*Did?*)

They watched the giraffe for a long time. (*Why?*)

16 Write according to the model.

Example ▶ 24 – the twenty-fourth

13, 15, 18, 20, 25, 31, 42, 53

17 Learn to write these words.

wild, domestic, sheep (sheep), favourite, hamster,
beautiful, parrot

Puzzle Time

18 What's the message? This is the key to the code.¹

1 – a	8 – h	15 – o	22 – v
2 – b	9 – i	16 – p	23 – w
3 – c	10 – j	17 – q	24 – x
4 – d	11 – k	18 – r	25 – y
5 – e	12 – l	19 – s	26 – z
6 – f	13 – m	20 – t	
7 – g	14 – n	21 – u	

1325 61221521189205 114913112 919 1 1291514

¹ the key [ki:] to the code [kəʊd] – ключ к коду

54. The Fifty-fourth Lesson

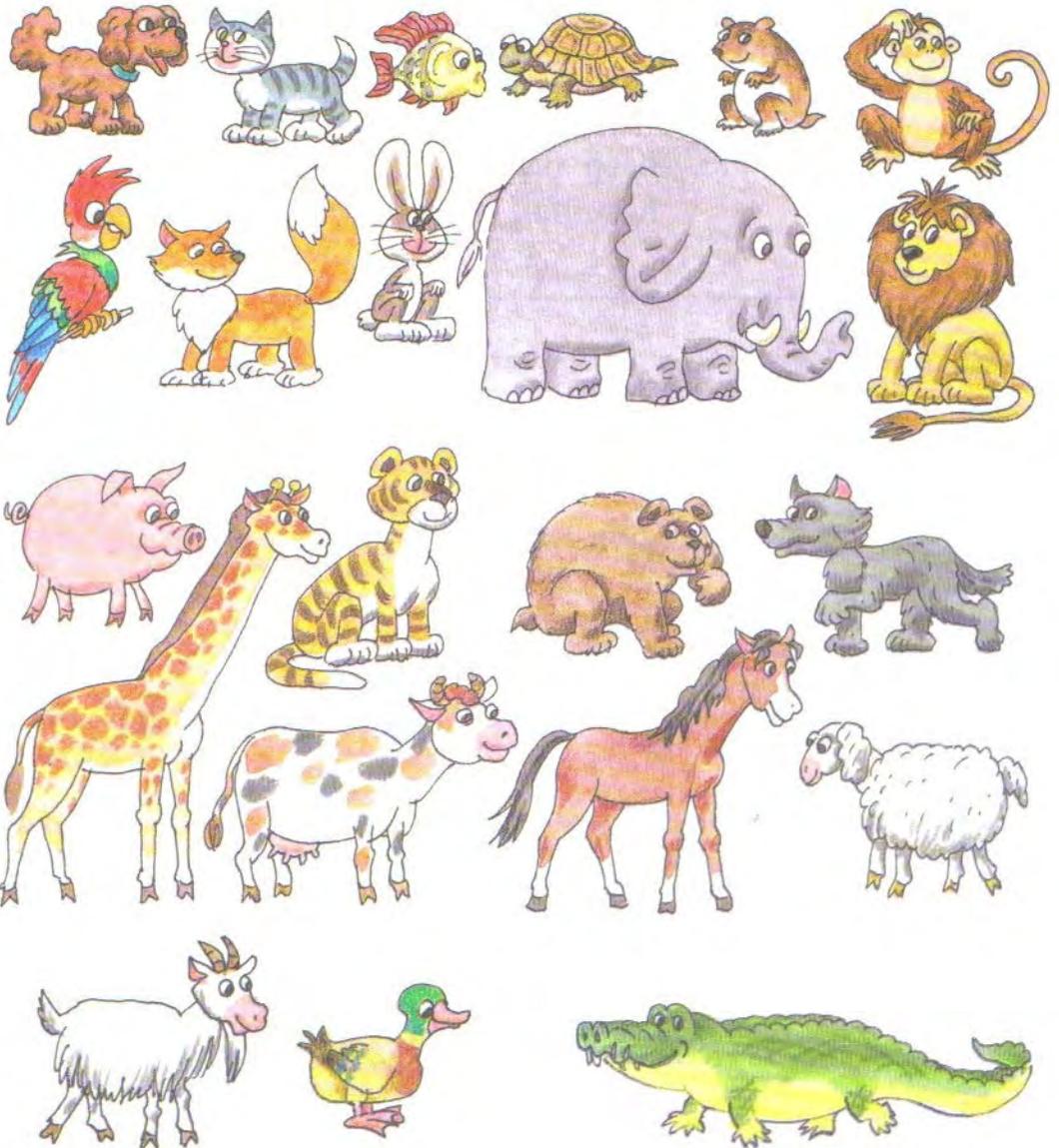
Lesson Fifty-four

Review 3



Let Us Talk

- 1 Play a "Memory Game". Look at the pictures for a minute, then close it and quickly name all the animals.



Pets and Other Animals

2 Compare the animals (the pictures in Exercise 1 can help you).

Examples

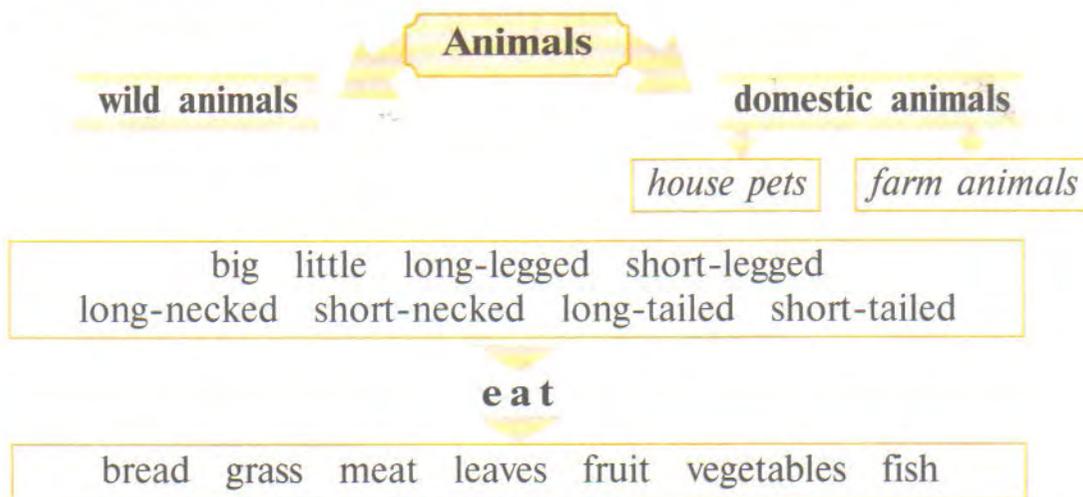
The elephant is bigger than the tiger.

The monkey's tail is longer than the hare's.

3 Look at the picture again (Exercise 1). Find and name the animals that:

- can swim;
- can jump;
- don't eat meat;
- eat grass;
- eat meat.

4 Now name the animals according to the diagram. Say what you can about one of them.



Examples

1) *I know ... wild animals. They are: ...*

I know ... domestic animals. They are: ...

... are long-legged wild animals. They eat: ...

2) *The horse is a domestic animal. It's a farm animal.*

It's big. It's brown, grey and white. The horse has got four long legs, a long neck and a long tail. It eats grass.

5 Play a guessing game. Think of an animal. Let your classmates guess what animal it is by asking you different questions.

- Is it a wild or a domestic animal?
- Is it big or little?
- What colour is it?

- How many legs has it got?
- Is its neck (body, tail) long or short?
- Has it got hair?
- Is it a long-haired or a short-haired animal?
- Are its ears (eyes) big or little?
- Has it got sharp¹ teeth?
- Can it swim (run, jump)?
- Does it eat grass (leaves, meat, fish, bread, vegetables, fruit)?
- Does it live in the house (on a farm)? ...

- 6 Describe an animal so that your classmates could guess what animal it is.
- 7 Let us see if you know everything about your pet. Your classmates can ask you all kinds of questions! Do answer them!
- 8 If you've got a pet at home, say how you must take care² of it: what you *must* (*mustn't*) do.
- 9 Now it's your turn to make up a story of your own to any picture you like.



Let Us Read

- 10 Find and read aloud:
 - the names of the parts of the body;
 - the words you need to describe an animal;
 - the words you need to compare things.

¹ sharp [ʃɑ:p] – острый

² take care ['teɪk 'keə] = look after

Pets and Other Animals

big, pet, teach, wolf, tail, long, look after, neck, must, clever, lion, eye, left, bigger, nose, right, short, head, nicer, wolves, parrot, longer, wild, mouth, beautiful, hair, cleverer, hamster, favourite, sheep, domestic, foot, pig, feet, toe, body, arm, little, older, finger, shoulder, newer, hand, shorter, funnier, bear, tastier

11 Read and prove that the English are pet lovers.

PETS IN GREAT BRITAIN

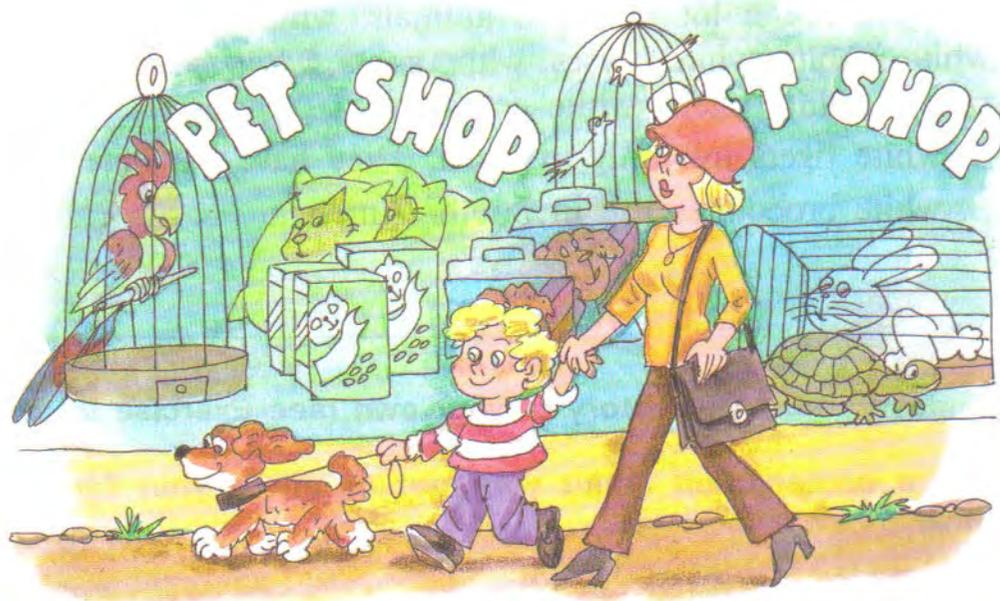
Lots of families in Great Britain have got one or more¹ pets.

Dogs are the favourite pets and there are about 6 million of them in Britain. The second favourite is a bird – budgie.²

Some families do not keep cats or dogs. They keep other animals as pets in their homes.

There are more than 12 million pets in Britain.

The English take good care of their pets. They give them nice names: Rover, Rax, Cindy, Misty (for dogs); Albert, Snowy, Fluffy, Tom (for cats); Polly, Chatterbox (for parrots); Guy, Scamper, Shipley,



¹ more [mɔ:] – более

² budgie ['bʌdʒi] – вид попугая

Shirley (for monkeys). When they speak of their pets, they say, “He”, “She” (not “It”).

The English give their pets nice food to eat. They buy food for their pets in pet shops. The English are pet lovers!

- 12** Read the text to know more about animals. What do you think is the most interesting information?

IT'S INTERESTING¹ TO KNOW

- ... rabbits can live five years, sheep can live twelve years, cats can live thirteen years, dogs can live fifteen years, goats can live fifteen years, cows can live twenty-five years, pigs can live twenty-five years, horses can live thirty years;
- ... there was a cat who lived thirty-three years;
- ... there was a cat who had thirteen kittens;
- ... cats love their homes. If you get a new home and take your cat with you, it can run away to its old home;
- ... mice can sing;
- ... there are a lot of white animals: white cats, white dogs, white rabbits, white horses, white goats, white bears, white elephants, white tigers, white crocodiles;
- ... white tigers live only in India. They have got blue eyes;
- ... white crocodiles live in South² America.



Let Us Write

- 13** Compose and write a story of your own (see Exercise 9).
- 14** Write a composition about your pet or about your favourite animal.

¹ it's interesting [ˈɪnrəstɪŋ] – интересно

² South [saʊθ] – южный

Puzzle Time



15 Guess the riddles.

I'm big. I'm grey.
My nose is long.
My tail is short.
I'm an

I'm little. I'm grey.
My nose is short.
My tail is long.
I'm a

55. The Fifty-fifth **Lesson**
Lesson Fifty-five

Optional

56. The Fifty-sixth **Lesson**
Lesson Fifty-six

Listening
Comprehension
Lesson.  57

57. The Fifty-seventh **Lesson**
Lesson Fifty-seven

Lesson 10 for
Home Reading

Text "The Story of the Three Goats", part II

58. The Fifty-eighth **Lesson**
Lesson Fifty-eight

Optional

CLOTHING

59. The Fifty-ninth Lesson Lesson Fifty-nine



Let Us Learn



beautiful – **more** beautiful – (the) **most** beautiful
interesting – **more** interesting – (the) **most** interesting

(see part 2, p. 147)

① Look at the pictures and compare.

Example

The first cup is beautiful.

The second cup is more beautiful.

The third cup is the most beautiful of all.



1



2



3



1



2



3



1



2



3



1



2



3



1



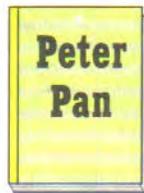
2



3



1



2



3

2 Choose the right word for each gap.

tastier newer the longest more beautiful longer
nicer more interesting older the shortest big long

1. The giraffe has got a ... neck.
2. What animal has got the ... tail?
3. I think that bananas are ... than oranges.
4. The elephant has got ... ears.
5. The horse has got a ... tail than the pig.
6. The new doll is ... than the old one.
7. I think that the book "Pinocchio" is ... than "The Three Little Pigs".

8. There is no place ... than home.
9. My grandpa is ... than my grandma.
10. Kate's toys are ... than Jane's.

③ Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  58.

④ This man is a magician. He can do magic. Say what he has got.

Example ▶ *He has got a ... in his*



Let Us Read and Learn

⑤ Listen, read and learn,  59.

Ted: Mum, where's my toy bear?

Mother: Oh, Ted, you must know where your toys are. You must always **keep the right thing in the right place.**



Let Us Read

⑥ Read the text and you'll know why rabbits have got short tails.

WHY RABBITS HAVE GOT SHORT TAILS

Once there lived a Rabbit. His name was Bunny. He was grey and big, bigger than his Brother Bonny. But he had no tail. And he wanted to have a long tail, longer than that of Mrs Fox.

One day Bunny went for a walk. He saw Mrs Fox.

“Hello, Mrs Fox,” he said.

“Where are you going?”

“I’m going shopping.”

“What are you going to buy?”

“I’m going to buy a tail.”

“But you’ve got a tail! I think it’s the longest and the most beautiful tail!”

“Well, but I want a new one, a longer and more beautiful one than my old tail.”

“Oh, please, Mrs Fox, buy a tail for me too. Look at me, I haven’t got a tail.”

“OK,” said the Fox and ran to the shop.

In the shop Mrs Fox bought only one tail. It was a beautiful long red tail, it was longer and more beautiful than her old tail.

She ran back home. On the way¹ home she saw Brother Rabbit. Bunny looked at the Fox’s tail and said, “Oh, what a beautiful tail you’ve got. And where is my tail?”

“I’m sorry,” said the Fox, “but there wasn’t any tail for you.”

Poor little Bunny! He was so sorry. Mrs Fox hadn’t bought² a new tail for him!



¹ On the way [ɒn ðə 'weɪ] – По дороге

² hadn't bought [bɔ:t] – не купила

A Dog who was running by came up to Bunny and said: "What's the matter with you?"

"Oh," said Bunny, "all the animals have got long, beautiful tails but I haven't got a tail!"

"Poor little Bunny!" said the Dog.

At that time a Cat was running by.

"Bunny! I've got an idea. I think I know how to help you!" And he ran after the Cat, bit off a little piece¹ of the Cat's tail and gave it to Bunny. Bunny was happy!



"Thank you very much," he said. "Now I've got a tail, too ... It's a very short tail, but it's a tail."

That's why rabbits have got short tails.

- 7** Choose and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the pictures (see Exercise 6).



Let Us Talk

- 8** Think of another end for the tale.



Let Us Write

- 9** Choose and write any 5 sentences (see Exercise 2).

¹ bit off a little piece ['bit of ə'litl 'pi:s] – откусил маленький кусочек

Puzzle Time



10 How many words can you find in the chainword?



60. The Sixtieth Lesson

Lesson Sixty

Let Us Learn



good – better – (the) best
bad – worse – (the) worst

(see part 2, p. 147)

1 Compare according to the example.

a) **Example** ▶ a long tail – a longer tail – the longest tail

a short tail, a funny monkey, a long nose, big ears, a clever dog, an old man, a long street, big animals, new toys, a nice pet, short legs, big shops, a long walk, a funny story

b) Example ▶ *a beautiful child – a more beautiful child – the most beautiful child*

a beautiful girl, a beautiful woman, interesting books, an interesting tale, beautiful trees, beautiful toys, an interesting story

c) Example ▶ *a good daughter – a better daughter – the best daughter*

a good son, a bad boy, good children, bad food, good food, a good wife

2 Which words do you need to make the sentences complete?

the best cleverer interesting more beautiful nicer
the longest the funniest big older

1. There are a lot of ... shops in London. 2. Peter is ... pupil in the class. 3. Mr Smith is ... than Mr Grey. 4. I think that the monkey is ... animal. 5. The elephant's nose is 6. I think Mary is ... than Sally. 7. I think that the parrot is ... pet. 8. This white puppy is ... than that black one. 9. What an ... story it is!

3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  60.

4 Try and read the new words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

cat – **hat**, **cap**, **bad** – worse [wɜ:s] – (the) worst [wɜ:st]
where – **wear** – **wore** [wɔ:]

[ʊ] foot – **good** – better – (the) best

[u:] food – **boot** – shoe

a hat – **hats**, a beautiful hat, my brother's hat, a new hat, an old hat. Mum wants to buy a new hat.

a cap – **caps**, a brown cap, my brother's cap. – Whose cap is that?
– It's my friend's cap.

wear – **wore** – What did you wear yesterday, a cap or a hat?
– I wore a cap yesterday. My mother is wearing her new hat.

a shoe – shoes, a right shoe, a left shoe, new shoes, brown shoes, old shoes. Yesterday Mother bought me new shoes. I think my new shoes are very nice.

a boot – boots, grey boots, old boots, new boots, big boots. – Do you wear boots or shoes when you go for a walk? – Boots.

good – better – (the) best, a good family, a good teacher, a good pupil. – Is Peter a good pupil? – Yes, but Mike is a better pupil and Bob is the best. Milk is good for children. It's very good of you to help your parents.

bad – worse – (the) worst, a bad boy, a bad pupil, a bad egg, bad fish, bad food. The fish was so bad that we couldn't eat it. I think Nick plays hockey worse than Mike. This story is worse than that one. This old hat is certainly the worst to wear. From bad to worse. Things go from bad to worse.

interesting – more interesting – the most interesting, an interesting book, an interesting film, an interesting game. I think that the game leap-frog is more interesting than tag. – And what do you think is the most interesting game? – I think that hopscotch is the most interesting game.

5 Look at the pictures and say what they are wearing on their heads and feet.





Let Us Read and Learn

- 6 Enjoy your English and sing the song "What Do You Wear?",  61.

♪ WHAT DO YOU WEAR? ♪

I. What do you wear on your head?

A hat.

What do you wear on your head?

A cap.

A hat and a cap. } 2 times
A cap and a hat. }

II. What do you wear on your feet?

Shoes.

What do you wear on your feet?

Boots.

Boots and shoes. } 2 times
Shoes and boots. }

- 7 Read and learn the proverb. Give the Russian equivalent.

That's another pair of shoes.

- 8 Listen, read and learn,  62.

AT THE SHOP

Mrs Grey: I'd like a pair of shoes, please.

*Shop assistant:*¹ What colour would you like?

Mrs Grey: Brown.

Shop assistant: And **what size**² do you want?

Mrs Grey: Five. Can I **try them on**?³

Shop assistant: Of course.

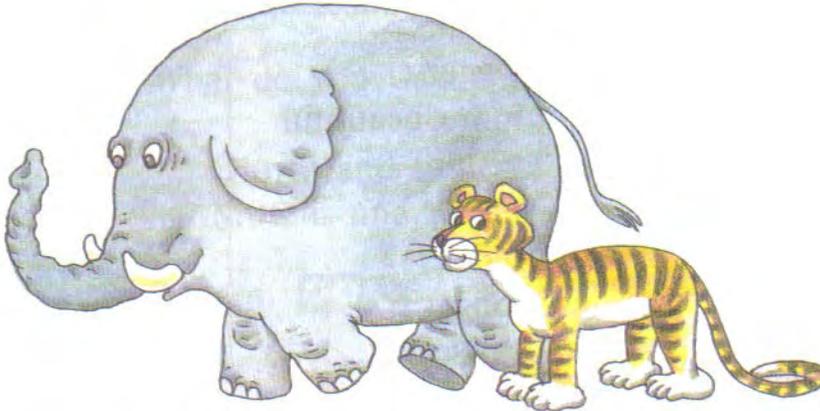
¹ shop assistant ['ʃɒp ə,sɪstənt] – продавец

² size [saɪz] – размер

³ try on ['traɪ 'ɒn] – примерять

Let Us Talk

- 9 Now Mrs Grey is going to buy a pair of boots (a hat, a cap). Role-play the dialogue between Mrs Grey and the shop assistant (see Exercise 8).
- 10 Compare these animals.



- 11 Choose any toys or pictures (or draw pictures of your own) and compare them.

Let Us Write

- 12 Choose and write any 6 comparisons (see Exercise 1).
- 13 Learn to write these words.

interesting, wear (wore), hat, cap

Puzzle Time

- 14 Make sure you remember the words well. Change the letters to make up new words.

Example ▶ rose – nose

big, take, silk, talk, look, life, carrot, bear, box, boy, now, peck, cat, foot, food



61. The Sixty-first Lesson

Lesson Sixty-one



Let Us Learn

① How many sentences can you make up? Who is the best?

The book	was were	bigger	than he thought.
The toys		more beautiful	
The children		better	
The street		nicer	
The hat		older	
The film		longer	
The animal		worse	
The food		newer	
The stories		cleverer	
The woman		more interesting tastier	

② Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  63.

③ Look at the pictures and say:

- what you can see;
- if the things are new or old;
- what colour they are;
- what you like to wear;
- what your brother likes to wear.





Let Us Read and Learn

- ④ Enjoy your English and sing the song “What Do You Wear?”,  64.

♪ WHAT DO YOU WEAR? ♪

III. What do you wear on your hands?

Gloves.¹

What do you wear on your hands?

Mittens.²

Gloves and mittens. }
Mittens and gloves. } *2 times*

- ⑤ Listen, read and learn,  65.

SHOES AND BOOTS

Shoes and boots,
Boots and shoes,
Come and buy
The size you use.³

Try them on
Before you choose,
Shoes and boots,
Boots and shoes.

- ⑥ Read and learn the proverb. Give the Russian equivalent.

Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today.

Let Us Read

- ⑦ Can you choose not more than 6–7 sentences to give the main idea of the tale? Read them aloud.



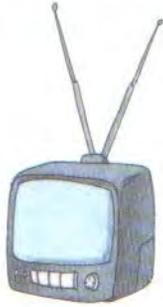
A GOOD IDEA

Once in a very, very old house there lived a very, very big cat and a lot of very, very little mice.

¹ gloves [glʌvz] – перчатки

² mittens [ˈmɪtnz] – варежки

³ use [ju:z] = wear



TV set

The cat, whose name was Tom, lived in the kitchen.¹ The mice lived under the kitchen.

Where could the little mice get food to eat? In the kitchen, of course! But there was the cat there! He could eat them!

They thought what to do. They thought and thought, and thought ...

Then a very, very little mouse had an idea. She said, "Let's go to the kitchen when Tom is not there."

"That's not a bad idea!" said Mother-mouse. "But the cat runs quicker² than you. He can catch³ and eat you."

All the mice thought and thought and thought again ... Then the mouse who was older than the other mice said: "I think I know what to do. Let's buy a TV set for Tom. We all know that he likes watching TV very much. When he is busy watching TV we can eat all the food we want."

All the mice liked the idea very much. So they went to the shop and bought a TV set for Tom.



mouse



mice



¹ kitchen ['kɪtʃən] – кухня

² quicker ['kwɪkə] – быстрее

³ catch [kæʃ] – ловить, поймать

Now every evening Tom watches TV and the mice have a very good supper in the kitchen. They can eat all the things they want.

Let Us Talk



- 8 Tell your classmates a summary of the tale.
- 9 Make or draw a doll and say what it is wearing.

Let Us Write



- 10 Make up 6 sentences and write them down (see Exercise 1).
- 11 Learn to write these words.

bad – worse – the worst; good – better – the best;
shoe, boot

Puzzle Time



- 12 Guess the word.

This is the code.

1. The first letter of “s o m e t i m e s”;
2. the second letter of “t w e n t y”;
3. the fourth letter of “i n t e r e s t i n g”;
4. the second letter of “h a m s t e r”;
5. the fifth letter of “r i g h t”;
6. the eighth letter of “t o r t o i s e”;
7. the sixth letter of “f a v o u r i t e”.

62. The Sixty-second Lesson

Lesson Sixty-two



Let Us Learn

- ① Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[i:] tea, teach, meat, eat, clean, **jeans**, a pair of jeans, blue jeans, black jeans, new jeans, old jeans. My jeans are old, and Mum is going to buy me a new pair of jeans. Boys and girls like to wear jeans.

[e] head, bread, pleasure, **sweater**, a sweater – sweaters, a nice sweater, a grey and black sweater. My sister thinks that a sweater goes well with jeans. Oh, what a nice sweater it is!

[aʊ] mouth, houses, **trousers**, a pair of trousers, brown trousers, grey trousers. – Do you wear jeans or trousers to school? – I usually wear trousers. Yesterday Dad bought a new pair of grey trousers.

[æ] hamster, black, Jack, **jacket**, a jacket – jackets, an old jacket, a new jacket. My old jacket is grey. My new jacket is blue. I like my new jacket.

- ② Sue never knows where her things are. And now she is looking for her things. What does she say?

Example ▶ *Where is (are) my ..., I wonder?*



6 Listen, read and learn,  68.

GRASSHOPPER



grasshopper

Little Grasshopper lives in the fields.¹
He is a nice funny fellow.
His coat² is green, his hat is blue,
His trousers are brown and yellow.



Let Us Read

7 Read the text and say what you think of Pif.

PIF

Pif is a funny little dog. There are a lot of books about Pif. English children like to read them. Now you can read about Pif, too.

Pif wants to go for a walk. He puts on³ his blue jeans, a grey sweater, brown boots, a red cap and goes for a walk.

Suddenly it begins to rain.⁴ Pif hasn't got an umbrella.⁵ He is cold. He is very cold.



He sees a tree. He runs up to the tree and sits down under it.
“How can I get home, I wonder?” Pif thinks. “I don't want to sit here all alone⁶ under the tree. I'm cold and hungry. I want to get home. But how can I? I haven't got an umbrella! Where can I get one? Oh, that's a good idea!”

¹ field [fi:ld] – поле

² coat [kəʊt] – пиджак

³ put on ['pʊt 'ɒn] – надевать

⁴ it begins to rain [ɪt bɪ'gɪnz tə 'reɪn] – начинается дождь

⁵ umbrella [ʌm'brelə] – зонт

⁶ all alone ['ɔ:l ə'ləʊn] – совсем один

Pif takes the tree like an umbrella and goes home.
I don't think that Pif did the right thing.
And what do you think?

- 8 Choose and read aloud the sentences which are true to the story.**

Pif is a funny little monkey.

Pif is a funny little dog.

Pif wants to go for a walk.

Pif doesn't want to go for a walk.

He is wearing black jeans and a blue jacket.

He is wearing blue jeans, a grey sweater, brown boots and a red cap.

Pif hasn't got an umbrella.

Pif has got an umbrella.

Pif sees a house.

Pif sees a tree.

Pif takes the tree like an umbrella and sits down.

Pif takes the tree like an umbrella and runs home.

Let Us Talk



- 9 Play a "Memory Game". Look at your classmates for a minute and try to remember what they are wearing. Then close your eyes and say it.**
- 10 Talk to each other on the topic "Shopping". These questions can help you.**

Who usually goes shopping in your family?

Do you often go shopping?

When did you go shopping last time?

Who did you go shopping with?

What new things did you buy?

What size shoes do you wear?

Do you usually try shoes (jeans ...) on before you buy them?

What colour shoes (jeans) do you like to wear?

How do you usually choose things before you buy them?

What do you usually wear at home?

What do you wear when you go to school (to a party)?
What do you wear when it's cold (warm)?



Let Us Write

- 11 Write 7 questions. Begin them with: *did, who, when, whom, what, what colour jeans, what colour shoes.*

Yesterday Mother bought her daughter a pair of blue jeans and white shoes.

- 12 Choose the correct word and copy the sentences.

1. Lions are (*clever, cleverer, the cleverest*) than tigers. 2. The (*clever, cleverer, cleverest*) domestic animals are the horse and the dog. 3. The (*clever, cleverer, cleverest*) wild animals are monkeys. 4. The (*big, bigger, biggest*) animal is the elephant. 5. The giraffe's neck is (*long, longer, the longest*) than the tiger's.

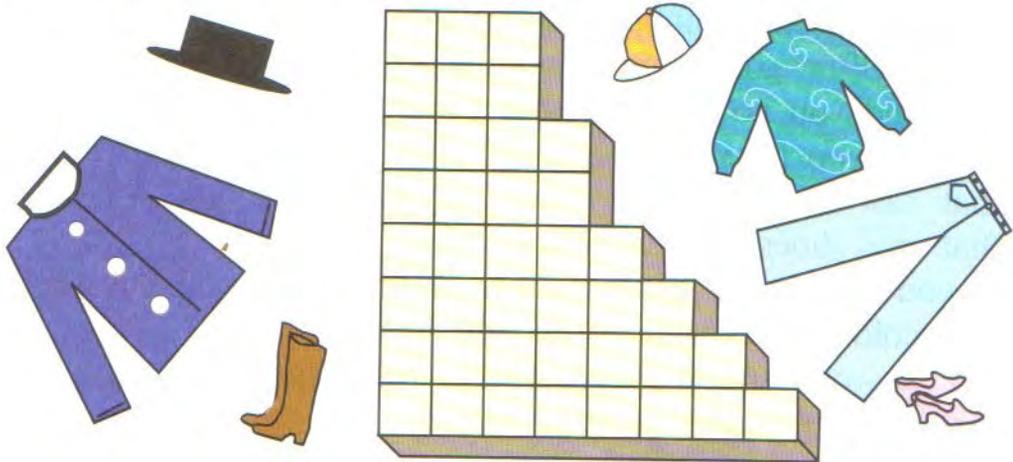
- 13 Learn to write these words.

jeans, trousers, sweater, jacket



Puzzle Time

- 14 Build up the "ladder" ("Clothes").



63. The Sixty-third **Lesson**
Lesson Sixty-three

Optional

64. The Sixty-fourth **Lesson**
Lesson Sixty-four

Listening
 Comprehension
 Lesson.  69

65. The Sixty-fifth **Lesson**
Lesson Sixty-five
 Text "Cinderella", part II

Lesson 11 for
 Home Reading

66. The Sixty-sixth **Lesson**
Lesson Sixty-six

Optional

67. The Sixty-seventh **Lesson**
Lesson Sixty-seven

Let Us Learn



- ① Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  70.
- ② Read the new words.

tomorrow [tə'mɒrəʊ]

next [nekst]



tomorrow, next week, next month ...

I	}	shall	}	play.	I	}	'll play.	
We					We			
He	}	will			He	}		
She					She			
It	}				will	It		}
You						You		
They	They							

(see part 2, p. 152)

3 Read and compare.

Every day I **get up** at 7 o'clock.

Usually my brother **takes** our dog for a walk.

We often **visit** Granny.

Every morning they **have** porridge for breakfast.

Every year she **goes** to London to visit her relatives.

Dick usually **wears** jeans.

Tomorrow I **shall (I'll)** get up at 9 o'clock.

Tomorrow I'll **take** our dog for a walk.

We'll **visit** Granny next week.

Next morning they'll **have** eggs for breakfast.

Next year she'll **go** to London to visit her relatives, too.

Tomorrow he'll **wear** trousers.

4 What will they do? Make up as many true sentences as you can and read them aloud.

Tomorrow
Next week
Next month
Next year

Helen
my parents
our family
my friend and I
I
my brother
Jack

shall
will

watch TV.
celebrate Mum's birthday.
invite my friends to my birthday party.
go to the Zoo.
go to America.
play chess.
buy a new TV set.
play badminton.
make toys for little children.

5 a) The children want to play "Zoo". They have got masks of different animals. What does each of them say?

Example

*I shall be a bear. I shall put on the mask of a bear.
I shall walk like a bear.*



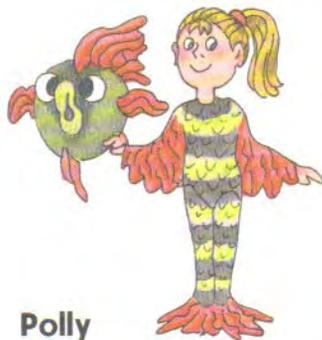
Tony



Kitty

b) Now talk about each of them.

Example Polly will be a fish. She will put on the mask of a fish. She will swim like a fish.



Polly



Dick

6 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[ɔ:] horse, tortoise, short, **shorts**, a pair of shorts, new shorts, old shorts. — What colour shorts do you like? — I like blue and grey shorts, and you?

warm — **warmer** — **the warmest**, warm water, warm milk. When I'm ill, Mum always gives me warm milk. It's warm. It's warm today. It wasn't warm yesterday. It was warmer yesterday than it's today. They say it'll be warm tomorrow. — Do you wear jeans when it's warm? — No, I wear shorts when it's warm.

[aʊ] mouth, mouse, house — houses, blouse, **a blouse** — blouses, a white blouse, a beautiful blouse. You look great in that new blouse! I think that Mother's new blouse is beautiful.

[ɜ:] bird, girl, skirt, **a skirt** — skirts, a short skirt, a long skirt, a skirt and a blouse, a black skirt and a white blouse. My mother likes to wear a white blouse and a blue skirt. Does your mother like to wear short skirts or long skirts?

[ɜ:] **shirt**, a shirt — shirts, a white shirt, a grey shirt. I like to wear shirts and my mother likes to wear blouses. Tomorrow we shall buy a new shirt for my brother.

[əʊ] old, cold, **cold** — **colder** — **the coldest**, cold water, cold meat. Dad likes to eat cold meat and vegetables for supper. It's cold.

It's cold today. It was colder yesterday. They say it'll not be cold tomorrow. What do you wear when it's cold?

- 7 Enjoy your English and sing the song "The Kittens' Clothes",
 71.



THE KITTENS' CLOTHES

Jeans and trousers,
Sweaters and shirts,
Socks² and tights,³
And jackets and skirts.
T-shirts,⁴ shoes,
High boots⁵ and mittens,
These are the clothes
Of the kittens.

- 8 Listen, read and learn,  72.

WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO?

What are you going to do
When you are twenty-two?
I'll write a story,
I'll make a plane,
I'll teach children,
I'll make rain.

What are you going to be
When you are twenty-three?
I'll be a pilot,
I'll be a doctor,
I'll be a teacher,
I'll be a worker.

- 1 clothes [kləʊðz] — одежда
2 socks [sɒks] — носки
3 tights [taɪts] — колготки
4 T-shirt ['ti:ʃɜ:t] — футболка
5 high boots ['haɪ 'bu:ts] — сапоги

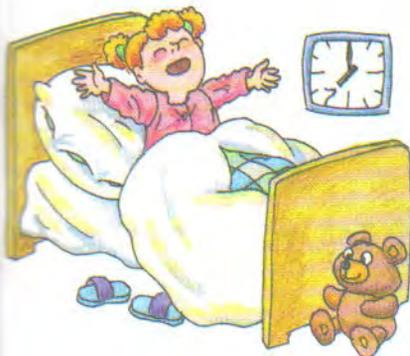
Where are you going to be
 When you are twenty-three?
 I'll be in London,
 I'll be in Rome,¹
 I'll be in Africa,
 I'll be home.

What are you going to do
 When you are one hundred and two?
 I don't know.
 Do you?

Let Us Talk



- 9 Look at the pictures and say:
- what Jane usually does at ... o'clock;
 - what she is doing now;
 - what she will do tomorrow at ... o'clock.



¹ Rome [rəʊm] – Рим



- 10 Do you know what you'll do tomorrow? Tell your classmates about it.



Let Us Write

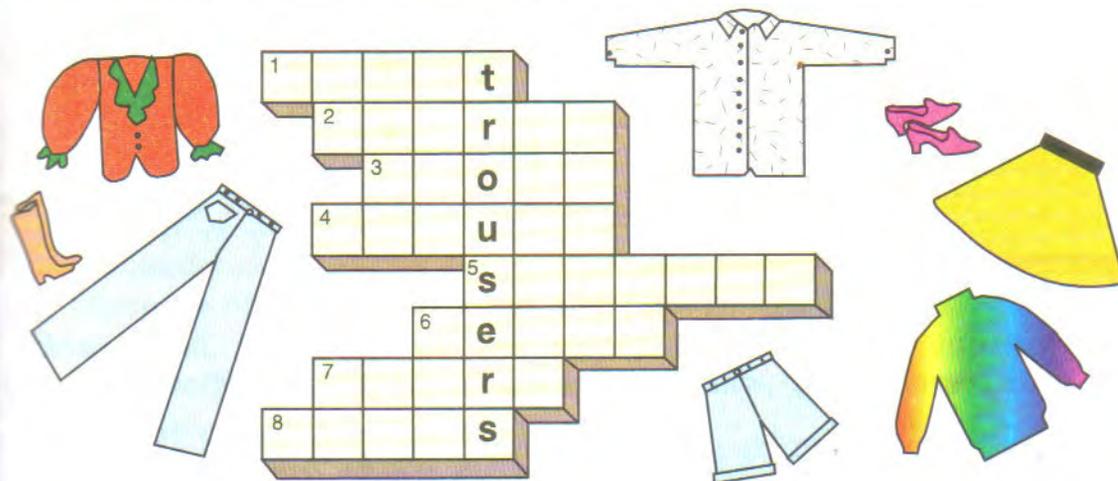
- 11 Make up any 6 sentences and write them down (see Exercise 4).
- 12 Learn to write these words.

shirt, blouse, shorts, skirt



Puzzle Time

13 Complete the crossword ("Clothes").



68. The Sixty-eighth Lesson

Lesson Sixty-eight



tomorrow

①

Shall	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ we \end{array} \right\}$	play?	Yes,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ we \\ he \\ she \\ it \\ you \\ they \end{array} \right\}$	will.	No,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ we \\ he \\ she \\ it \\ you \\ they \end{array} \right\}$	shall not=
								shan't.
Will	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} he \\ she \\ it \\ you \\ they \end{array} \right\}$	play?	Yes,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ we \\ he \\ she \\ it \\ you \\ they \end{array} \right\}$	will.	No,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ we \\ he \\ she \\ it \\ you \\ they \end{array} \right\}$	will not=
								won't.
								[ʃɑ:nt]
								[wəʊnt]

⊖

I	}	shall not	}	play ...
We				
He	}	will not		
She				
It				
You				
They				

(see part 2, p. 152—153)

- ① Find out what your classmates will do *tomorrow, next week, next month, next year*. Let them answer your questions.

Will you

come to school
go for a walk
go shopping with Mum
help your granny about the house
buy a new TV set
go to the Zoo
go to the swimming pool
put on your new dress
visit your friend
come to see your granny
go to Kiev

tomorrow?
next week?
next month?
next year?

- ② a) This boy is a boaster. Read what he says.



- Tomorrow I shall eat ten eggs for breakfast.
- Tomorrow I shall watch TV at night.
- Tomorrow I shall buy a lot of new things.
- Tomorrow I shall send presents to all my friends.
- Tomorrow I shall go to London.
- Tomorrow I shall play chess with a champion.

- Tomorrow I shall take a cold shower ten times a day.
- Tomorrow I shall put on new white jeans to play football.

b) Express your doubt.

Example ▶ *Will you eat ten eggs for breakfast?*

c) Disagree with him.

Example ▶ *You'll not eat ten eggs for breakfast.*

3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  73.

4 Look at the pictures and say:

- what colour are these things;
- what you like (don't like) to wear;
- what you will put on tomorrow;
- what your sister will not put on tomorrow.



Let Us Read and Learn



5 Listen, read and learn the poem "Let's Play",  74.

LET'S PLAY

I shall be a lion,
And you will be a bear.
I shall run after you
And you'll hide under the chair.

6 Listen, read and learn,  75.

AT THE SHOP

Mrs Smith: Good afternoon.

Shop assistant: Good afternoon, Mrs Smith.

Mrs Smith: **Could you change¹** this sweater, please? I bought it yesterday for my son.

Shop assistant: Why? **What's wrong with it?²**

Mrs Smith: **It's the wrong size.**

Shop assistant: Is it too big or too small?³

Mrs Smith: It's too small for him.

Shop assistant: I'm sure this sweater will be **the right size** for your son.

Mrs Smith: Thanks a lot.



Let Us Read

7 Read the dialogue and say why Mother is angry.

Mother: Pete, it's seven o'clock. It's time to have breakfast and go to school. What are you doing?

Pete: I'm putting on my shirt. Where are my socks, I wonder? Oh, I don't know where my shoes are! And where are my trousers? Mum, please come and help me!

Mother: Here are your socks, shoes and trousers. And what is there in your pockets,⁴ I wonder?

Pete: Oh, some little things.

1 change [tʃeɪndʒ] – поменять

2 What's wrong [wɒŋ] with it? – Чем он вас не устраивает?

3 small [smɔ:l] – мал (маленький)

4 pocket ['pɒkɪt] – карман



Mother: Let us see what those little things are: a box, a tennis ball, three sweets, two cookies, an apple ...! Oh, Pete!! You must not keep those things in your pockets! Dress quickly¹ and have your breakfast. Look at the clock! It's time for me to go to my office!² When you go to school, put on your cap, your warm jacket and mittens. It's cold today. Now, look here, Pete, next time when you don't know where your things are I shall not help you!

- 8** Choose and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the picture.

Let Us Talk

- 9** Answer the questions.

1. What was the time when Pete got up?
2. Why couldn't he dress quickly?
3. What did he ask Mum to do?
4. What things did Mother give to Pete?
5. What was there in Pete's pockets?

¹ quickly ['kwɪkli] – быстро

² office ['ɒfɪs] – догадайтесь о значении этого слова



6. Will Pete put on his cap, his warm jacket and mittens? Why?
7. Do you think Pete's mother will help him next time?
8. Do you always know where your things are?
9. Is it good to have the right thing in the right place? Why?

10 Try to tell the text in your own words.

11 Mrs McDonald bought the wrong size jeans (*skirt, blouse ...*) for her daughter. Role-play the dialogue between Mrs McDonald and the shop assistant (see Exercise 6).



Let Us Write

12 Refer the sentences to the future.

1. — What ... you buy for your mother as a birthday present?
— I ... buy a box of sweets. 2. — ... you invite Bill to your birthday party? — Yes, I 3. — Nina ... not go to school tomorrow. She is ill. 4. — Where ... we go next month? — We ... not go to Kiev, we ... go to Odessa. 5. — When ... you do your homework? — I ... do it at four o'clock.

13 Look at the picture (Exercise 2 b, c): express your doubt (write 4 sentences); disagree with the boy (write 4 sentences).

14 Learn to write these words.

put on, take off, next, tomorrow



Puzzle Time

15 What does the message say? (For the code see Lesson 53, "Puzzle Time".)

2085 1897820 2089147 914 2085 1897820 1612135

69. The Sixty-ninth Lesson

Lesson Sixty-nine

Let Us Learn



- ① Are you curious? Ask your classmates what they will do *tomorrow, in the evening, next week, next month, next year*. Use the words in the box.

Example ▶ *Will you read in the evening?*

teach make a cake send visit watch TV put on
 help buy write take your pet for a walk come to see
 invite wear say goodbye celebrate open take off go

- ② Say what you (your father, mother ...) won't do *tomorrow, in the evening, next week, next month, next year*.

Examples ▶ *I shan't go to the swimming pool next week.*
My brother won't play hockey tomorrow.



Tomorrow Father and Bob will go to the shop to buy a present for Mum.

Will they go to the shop?

Will they buy a present for Mum or for Granny?

Will they go to the shop tomorrow or next week?

Who **will** go to the shop?

When **will** they go to the shop?

Where **will** they go tomorrow?

Why **will** they go to the shop?

With whom **will** Bob go to the shop?

What **will** they buy?

For whom **will** they buy a present?

3 Ask questions for more information.

Tomorrow Nora will go to the Zoo with her Grandpa.

4 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[əʊ] coat, a **coat** – **coats**, a new coat, an old coat, a brown coat.

I think a blue coat goes well with white trousers.

over, overcoat, **an overcoat** – **overcoats**. – Do you wear an overcoat or a jacket when it's cold? – I always wear an overcoat when it's cold.

[eɪ] tail, rain, raincoat, **a raincoat** – **raincoats**. I don't often put on my raincoat. I don't like to wear raincoats.

[aɪ] night, right, **tights**, brown tights, grey tights, these tights, those tights. – What colour tights do you like to wear? – I like to wear blue tights. What size tights do you wear?

5 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  76.

6 Look at the pictures and say how they run.

Examples ▶ *Dick can run quickly.*
Pam can't run quickly.





Let Us Read and Learn

- 7 Read and learn the proverb. Give the Russian equivalent.

Tastes differ.

- 8 Listen, read and learn,  77.

Ann: Mum, we are going to the theatre¹ with Granny, and Brett doesn't want to put on his new coat and trousers.

Mother: Oh, Brett, why don't you want to put on your new coat and your new trousers, I wonder? They are so nice! They **suit you² so well! You'll look great!³**

Brett: **Tastes differ**, I don't like new clothes!

Let Us Read



- 9 Read the story and say what you think of Fred and Peg.

Fred and his little sister Peg went for a walk. It was a cold day. Fred put on his warm brown trousers, a sweater, a cap, a jacket, warm boots and mittens. Peg put on a warm sweater, blue jeans, an overcoat, high boots, a warm cap and gloves. They took their dog Rover with them. The dog didn't have a coat or boots on and soon he was very cold. Rover wanted to go home.

The children were sorry for the dog and went home. Suddenly Peg said, "Oh, look, Fred! There's a little bird in the tree. I think the bird is cold, too. And it's hungry! Let us give it some food to eat!"

"That's a good idea!" said Fred.

When the children came home, they asked Granny to give them some bread and an apple. "What for?" asked Granny. "Are you hungry? Look at the clock! You had your dinner only 20 minutes ago."⁴

¹ theatre ['θiətə] – театр

² suit [sju:t] you – идет тебе

³ look great ['lʊk 'greɪt] – выглядеть великолепно

⁴ ago [ə'gəʊ] – тому назад



“Oh, no, Granny! We are not hungry! But the bird is. We want to give the bread and the apple to the bird. It’s over there¹ in the tree. It’s cold and hungry!”

“It’s very good of you to take care of birds,” said Granny and gave the children what they asked for.

The children went out into the street. They came up to the tree where the bird was and put the bread and the apple under it. The bird ate the bread and the apple and said, “Pee, pee, pee!..”

Do you know what the bird said? It said, “Thank you very much, Fred and Peg!”

A friend in need is a friend indeed.

- 10 Choose and read aloud 5–6 sentences to sum up the most important facts of the story.
- 11 Choose the best title for the story: “The Bird’s Friends”, “A Friend in Need Is a Friend Indeed”, “It Was Good of Them to Do It”.



Let Us Talk

- 12 Try to tell the story in the shortest possible way. Whose summary is the shortest?
- 13 Do you take care of birds and animals? How do you do it?

¹ over there [’əʊvə ’ðeə] – БОИ ТАМ

- 14 Tomorrow you won't go to school. What are your plans for tomorrow? What will you do?

Let Us Write

- 15 Ask questions for more information. Begin them with the words given in brackets.

1. Mother will wear her new blouse. (*When*)
2. Pat will go to the Zoo. (*With whom*)
3. The boys will play hockey. (*Where*)
4. Alice will put it on tomorrow. (*What*)
5. Father will buy a new overcoat. (*What colour*)
6. He will wear a black hat. (*Who*)

- 16 Ask questions for more information. Write as many questions as you can.

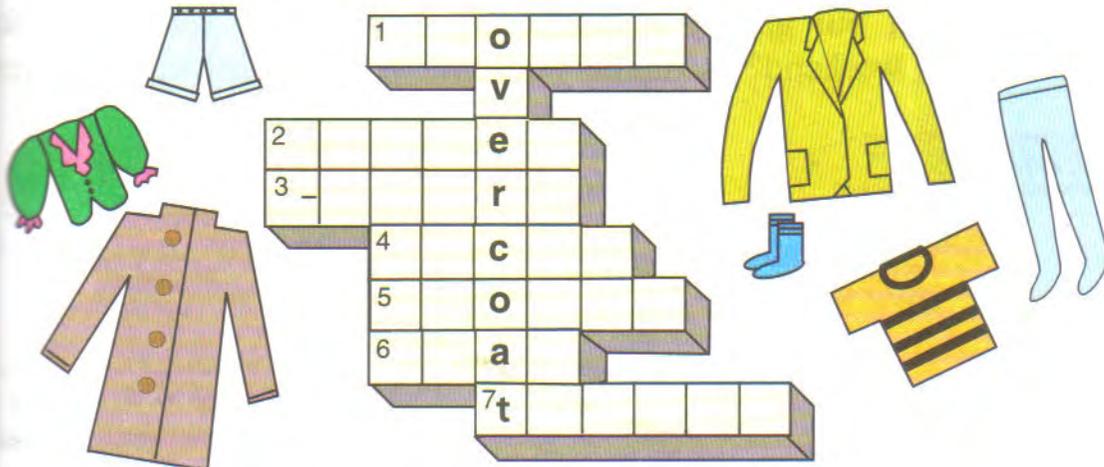
They will go there.

- 17 Learn to write these words.

tights, coat, overcoat, raincoat

Puzzle Time

- 18 Complete the crossword ("Clothes").



70. The Seventieth Lesson

Lesson Seventy



Let Us Learn

- 1 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  78.
- 2 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

- [e] bed, leg, left, **well**, very well, do well, read well, write well, play chess well. — What can you do well? — I think I can swim well. — What can't you do well? — I can't skate well. — Can your brother play chess well? — Yes, he can play chess very well.
- [əʊ] no, know, grow, slow, slow — slower — the slowest. Don't be so slow! Slow — **slowly**. John is a slow runner — he runs slowly. Sally, why are you dressing so slowly?
- [ɪ] big, pig, fish, **quick**, quick — quicker — the quickest. Mary is a quick runner. Liz is quicker. Polly is the quickest runner. Be quick! Be quick and eat your lunch! Quick — **quickly**. Do it quickly! Read it as quickly as you can. — Can you run quickly? — I think I can. Time goes so quickly!
- [eɪ] day, **day off**, on days off. — What do you usually do on your days off? — On my days off I always go to the swimming pool with Dad. — Will you go to the theatre on your day off? — Yes, I shall.
- [e] ten, red, neck, end, **weekend**, at the weekend, at weekends. We often visit our granny at weekends. — What are your plans for the next weekend? — At the weekend we shall visit our relatives.



bad' — **badly**
slow — **slowly**

quick — **quickly**
dear — **dearly**

good — **well**

(see part 2, p. 154)

3 Read and compare.

She is a **slow** reader.

She reads **slowly**.

He is a **quick** runner.

He runs **quickly**.

She is a **bad** cook.

She cooks **badly**.

He is a **good** footballer.

He plays football **well**.

4 Read and say:

- who is the best at English;
- who is the worst at English;
- who is the best tennis-player;
- who is the worst footballer.

Charlie speaks English well. Dan speaks English better than Charlie. Mary speaks English better than Dan. Mike speaks English badly. Sue speaks English worse than Mike. Roy speaks English worse than Sue.

Helen plays tennis well. Jane plays tennis better than Helen. Kate plays tennis better than Jane.

Jack plays football badly. Tom plays football worse than Jack. Nick plays football worse than Tom.

Let Us Read and Learn



5 Read and learn the proverb. Give the Russian equivalent.

If you cannot have the best, make the best of what you have.

6 Listen, read and learn, 79.

MY MOTHER

Who said "Goodnight"

When I was a child?

My mother.

Who dressed my dolls in clothes so gay¹

And showed² me often how to play?

My mother.

¹ gay [geɪ] – весёлый

² show [ʃəʊ] – показывать

Who ran to help me when I fell¹
And who could funny stories tell?

My mother.

Who sits at my head when I am in bed?

My mother.

Who is so nice, who is so kind,
Another so dear you'll never find?

My mother.



Let Us Read

7 Read and say if Mother liked the cake.

MOTHER'S BIRTHDAY

Tomorrow it will be Saturday. It'll be my Mummy's birthday! She'll be thirty-one. But she looks twenty, she really² does! My Dad and I will get up early³ in the morning, when Mum is still asleep.⁴ We'll clean the house and go to the shop to buy presents for Mother. I don't know what we'll buy. We shall see. But of course we'll buy flowers. All women like flowers, you know! I think we'll buy a beautiful blouse for her. She likes to wear blouses. We shall buy tasty things, too: sweets, chocolate, ice cream, cookies, apples, oranges, bananas and what not!

When Mum gets up we'll congratulate her on her birthday. We'll give her the presents and sing the song:

*Happy birthday to you,
Happy birthday to you,
Happy birthday, dear Mummy,
Happy birthday to you!*

Mother will invite her friends to her birthday party. They will come in the evening at about seven o'clock. Mum will put on her

¹ fall (fell [fel]) – падать

² really ['ri:li] – на самом деле

³ early ['z:li] – рано

⁴ still asleep ['stil ə'sli:p] – всё ещё спит



party dress. Dad will be in his best too. I'll put on my new white shirt and blue trousers. We'll have a good time!

Last year we had a lot of fun that day. Father wanted to make a surprise¹ for Mother – to cook a birthday cake. When he put the cake on the table Mum asked: “What is it, I wonder?”

“It's my present for you on your birthday. It's a birthday cake. I cooked it for you.”

Mum thanked Dad and ate some cake. I wondered how she could eat the cake! It was very bad, it really was! I was very hungry but I couldn't eat it!

The next day, when Dad wasn't at home I asked my Mum, “How could you eat the cake yesterday? Did you like it?”

Mother didn't say anything and smiled.²

8 Find and read aloud the answers to the questions.

1. How old will Mother be?
2. How old does she look?
3. What will Father and his son do in the morning?
4. What will they buy?
5. Why will they buy a blouse?
6. What song will they sing for Mother?
7. What will they put on in the evening?

¹ surprise [sə'praɪz] – догадаться о значении этого слова

² smile [smail] – улыбаться

8. What present did Father give Mother last year?
9. Why did the boy wonder?



Let Us Talk

- 9 Sum up the most important facts of the text.
- 10 Tell your classmates how you'll celebrate your Mother's birthday. Let your classmates ask you questions for more information.



Let Us Write

- 11 Your Mother is going to buy some new clothes. She'll make a list of them. What will she write in the list?
- 12 Put in the missing words.
 1. Why are you so ... ? You are dressing so
 2. Tim is a ... chess-player. He plays chess very
 3. Father was a ... cook. He cooked
 4. Peg is a ... reader. She reads
- 13 Learn to write these words.

well, quick – quickly, slow – slowly,
on the day off, at the weekend



Puzzle Time

- 14 What's the message? (See the key to the code Lesson 53, "Puzzle Time".)

9 1215225 1325 1315208518 451181225

71. The Seventy-first Lesson
Lesson Seventy-one

72. The Seventy-second Lesson
Lesson Seventy-two

Optional

*Listening
Comprehension
Lesson.  80*

73. The Seventy-third Lesson

Lesson Seventy-three

Review 4

Let Us Talk



① Play a game "Shopping List". Who is the winner?

- Examples**
- I'll go shopping. I'll buy mittens.
 - I'll go shopping. I'll buy mittens and a cap.
 - I'll go shopping. I'll buy mittens, a cap and

② Play a game "Dress a Doll".

- Examples**
- 1) - I am putting a dress on my doll.
Now I am taking the dress off the doll and putting a blouse on
 - 2) - Take a dress and put it on your doll.
- I'm putting a dress on my doll.
- Now take the dress off your doll and put a blouse on your doll



③ People wear different clothes. It depends on whether it's cold or warm. What will you wear if it's cold (warm)?

- Examples**
- If¹ it's cold tomorrow I'll wear
 - If it's warm tomorrow I'll put on

④ Ted invites Kitty to his birthday party. Act out their conversation.

⑤ Your friend invites you to come to his (her) birthday party tomorrow. What will you wear? Let your classmates guess.

- Example**
- Will you wear ... ?
 - No, I shan't. (Yes, I shall.)

¹ if [if] - если

- ⑥ Tell your classmates how you celebrated your birthday.
- ⑦ The children are going to have a fancy-dress party. They are choosing masks and clothes. What are they saying? Say it for them.

Example

Liz: I shall be a fox. I'll put on the mask of a fox. I'll put on a red dress, a small yellow hat and red shoes. I'll put on a long red tail too. I think I'll look great!



- ⑧ Say what clothes you like to wear and why.

Example

I like to wear a white or a blue blouse. My eyes are blue. I am blonde. I think that white and blue blouses suit me.

- ⑨ Listen to the dialogues,  81. Read and act them out. Then make up the dialogues of your own and role-play them.

I

Kitty: Oh, Liz, you look great in that party dress! It's so beautiful. It suits you very well.

Liz: Thank you. I like it too.

II

Mother: Oh, Sam, you look terrible in that yellow shirt. It doesn't suit you at all.

Sam: Well, I like it. Tastes differ.

Let Us Read

10 Find and read aloud:

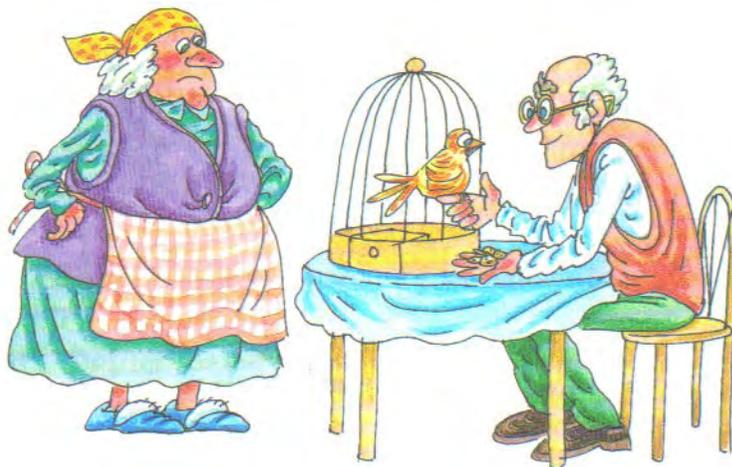
- the names of clothes;
- the names of the parts of the body;
- the words that help you compare things;
- the words that help you describe things;
- the names of animals.

look after, clever, cap, teach – taught, hat, long, lion, short, wear – wore, wolf, cleverer, jeans, wolves, interesting, (the) shortest, shoes, head, neck, boots, tail, hair, trousers, worse, shorter, bad, sweater, eye, must, mouth, left, nose, right, ear, jacket, better, different, tree, grow – grew, domestic, favourite, face, wild, (the) worst, shirt, animal, quick, foot – feet, blouse, leg, body, slow, shorts, shoulder, skirt, finger, (the) best, quickly, toe, tights, sheep – sheep, coat, slowly, hamster, beautiful, overcoat, big, parrot, nice, raincoat, well, mittens, put on – put on, gloves, take off – took off, badly

11 Read the tale and think of a title for it.

Once there lived an old man and an old woman, his wife. They had no children.

The old man had a pet – a bird. It was a little grey bird. The man loved it dearly. He took good care of it. He gave it food and water every morning and every evening.



One day the old man was going to the shop to buy food. He said to his wife: "I'll go to the shop to buy bread, salt, butter, spaghetti and sugar. Please, take good care of the bird! Give it food and water in the morning and in the evening!"

"OK," said his wife. "I will."

It was very cold. The old man put on his warm trousers and boots, a sweater, an overcoat, a warm cap and went away.

The woman didn't give the bird food or water in the morning. She didn't give the bird anything to eat or to drink in the evening. The bird was very hungry and thirsty. Suddenly the bird saw some bread on the table. It ate some bread.

When the woman saw the bird eating the bread, she took the bird and threw it out of the window.¹



When the old man came home, he couldn't see the bird. "Where is my bird?" he asked his wife. "Oh, where is my little bird? Where is my dear little friend?"

"I don't know," said his wife.

The old man went to the forest² to look for his bird. He walked, and walked, and walked. He was very cold. But he didn't go back home – he was looking for his dear friend.

At last³ he saw his bird in a tree! He was so happy! He asked the bird to come back home, but the bird didn't want to. The bird said to the old man: "Thank you very much. You took good care of me. But I will not go back home. I don't like your wife."

Then the bird put two baskets⁴ – one large⁵ and the other small – near the old man and said: "Take the basket which you like best and go back home."

¹ threw [θru:] it out of the window ['wɪndəʊ] – выбросила ее из окна

² forest ['fɒrɪst] – лес

³ at last [ət 'lɑ:st] – наконец

⁴ basket ['bɑ:skɪt] – корзина

⁵ large [lɑ:ʤ] – большая

The old man thanked the bird, took the small basket and went home. At home the old woman wanted to see what was in the basket. They opened the basket and saw that it was full of gold.¹ The old man told his wife that the gold was the bird's present.

"You are not clever! I'm cleverer than you! Tell me where your bird is! I'll go to see her. But I'll not take a small basket, I'll take a large one."

And the old woman ran to the forest. When she saw the old man's bird in the tree, she said: "Hello, dear little bird! I'm so happy to see you! I love you very much! You gave a basket to my husband. Please, give me a basket, too!"

"All right," said the bird, "I'll give you a basket, too."

And the little bird put two baskets near the woman – one large and the other small.

The old woman didn't think long. She quickly took the large basket and ran home. She didn't thank the bird.

When she was back home, she wanted to see what was in the basket and opened it quickly.

And what did she see?

She saw only yellow leaves in it!



12 Agree or disagree.

The old man and his wife had no children.

The old man had a pet – a puppy.

The man loved the bird dearly.

The woman didn't like the bird.

The woman didn't give the bird food or water.

The bird was not hungry or thirsty.

The old man went to the forest to look for the bird.

He was very cold.

He wasn't happy to see the bird.

¹ full of gold [ˈfʊl əv ˈɡəʊld] – полная золота

The bird was under a tree.
The man took the small basket.
The woman took the small basket, too.



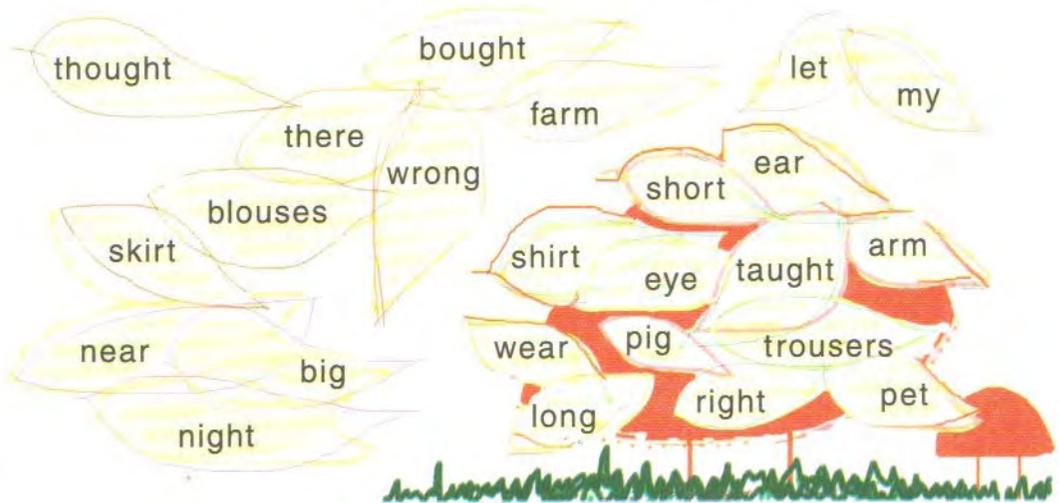
Let Us Write

- 13 Write how you are going to celebrate your birthday.



Puzzle Time

- 14 Find out the rhyming twins and write them down.



74. The Seventy-fourth **Lesson**
Lesson Seventy-four
Text "Cinderella", part III

*Lesson 12 for
Home Reading*

75. The Seventy-fifth **Lesson**
Lesson Seventy-five

Optional

SEASONS

76. The Seventy-sixth Lesson Lesson Seventy-six

Let Us Learn



- 1 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  83.
- 2 a) Look at the pictures and name the seasons.

Example ▶ *It's ...*



b) Say what season comes after ...

Example ▶ *After ... comes ...*

c) Say what you like to do in winter (summer, ...).

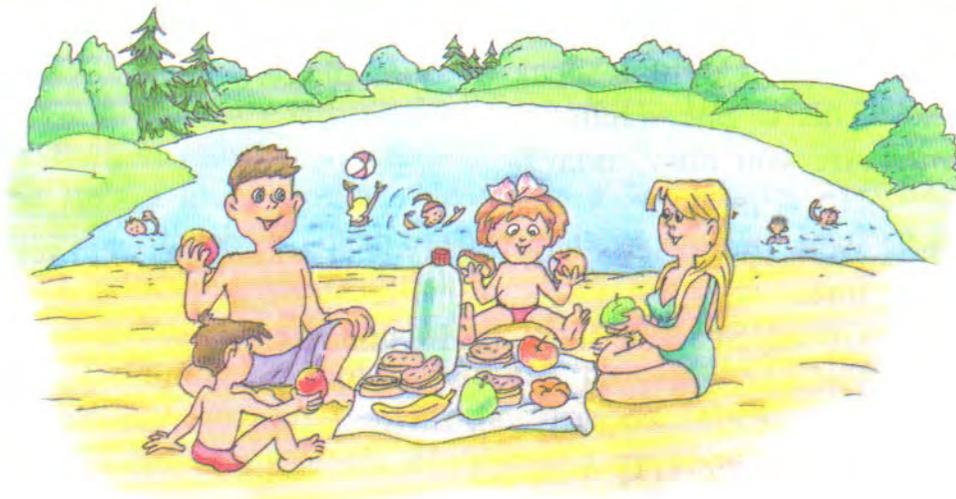
Example ▶ *I like to sledge in winter.*

d) Say what season you like best and why.

3 Pretend you are a teacher. Ask your classmates as many questions as you can about the pictures.



4 Play a "Champion Game". Who can say more sentences to describe the pictures?



Let Us Read and Learn



- 5 Here is a poem about seasons. Listen, read and learn it,  84.

SEASONS

Autumn is yellow,
 Winter is white,
 Spring is green,
 Summer is bright.¹

- 6 English people often talk about the weather. Let's start learning how to do it,  85.

I

Mrs Smith: I say, Jim, **how's the weather today?**²

Mr Smith: **It's terribly hot!**³

Mrs Smith: Then Bob will wear a white shirt and his blue shorts today.

Mr Smith: That's right.

¹ bright [braɪt] – яркий

² ... how's the weather ['weðə] today? – ... какая сегодня погода?

³ hot [hɒt] – жаркий

II

Sandy: Hello. Could I speak to Sue, please?

Sue: This is Sue. Hello!

Sandy: Are you busy today?

Sue: No, I'm not.

Sandy: Well then, let's go to Hyde Park. The weather is so fine.

Sue: Great! See you there in 10 minutes.

Sandy: OK.



Let Us Talk

- 7 Role-play the dialogues.
- 8 Think of your own dialogue and act it out.
- 9 There are four seasons in a year. What can you say about each of them?

Example

Summer comes after spring. Summer is green and bright. It's warmer in summer than in spring. Summer is the warmest season of the year. ...



Let Us Read

- 10 Read and say why all the Big Banana's friends liked him.

THE BIG BANANA AND THE LITTLE BANANA

I

Look at that fellow in a yellow jacket, blue jeans, brown boots and a green cap. Do you know him? He is the Big Banana. He is from a hot country, from Africa. But now he lives in Great Britain.

He has got a big body, long arms, short



legs, small feet, little green eyes, brown hair, a big red nose and a little red mouth.

He's a nice funny fellow. And he's clever. He's very clever, much cleverer than his sister.

And he's a great worker. He works a lot. That's why he grows, and grows, and grows. That's why he is so big – the Big Banana. He works a lot and grows quickly.

The Big Banana has got a lot of friends – different fruit and vegetables – oranges, apples, lemons, pineapples,¹ pears,² grapes,³ tangerines,⁴ carrots and many other friends. They all like the Big Banana, because⁵ he is good. He's very, very good, much better than his sister.

- 11** Choose and read aloud the sentences to describe the Big Banana.

Let Us Write

- 12** Find in the tale the names of fruit and write them down.



Puzzle Time

- 13** Solve the puzzle.



This is the season
When fruit is sweet.
This is the season
When school friends meet.⁶
What season is it?

¹ pineapple ['paɪnæpl] – ананас

² pear [peə] – груша

³ grapes [greɪps] – виноград

⁴ tangerine [ˌtændʒə'ri:n] – мандарин

⁵ because [bɪ'kɒz] – потому что

⁶ meet [mi:t] – встречаться

77. The Seventy-seventh Lesson

Lesson Seventy-seven



Let Us Learn

1 Some sentences are true, some are not. Choose and read aloud those which are true.

1. In winter there is a lot of snow. 2. Summer comes after winter. 3. Autumn is the warmest season of the year. 4. Summer is warmer than spring. 5. There are five seasons in a year. 6. There is usually a lot of fruit in autumn. 7. Winter is the coldest season of the year. 8. The English celebrate New Year in summer. 9. Summer holidays are the longest. 10. People celebrate Christmas in winter. 11. It often snows in winter.

2 Try to make up as many sentences as you can.

When the weather	fine	I	like
is	hot	my parents	likes
	cold	my friend	don't like
	warm	my brother	doesn't like
	bad	we	go
		children	goes
		people	put on
			puts on

3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  86.

4 Make the sentences complete.

The first winter month is

The second winter month is

The third winter month is

5 Match the sentences. Can you explain why?

Nancy was happy
 Mum couldn't go to the theatre with us
 Phil was ill
 My little brother didn't swim yesterday
 The children couldn't sledge
 Ned sent a greeting card to Bobby
 I'd love to have another glass of juice
 I'd like one more hamburger
 Pam loves Mike

she was busy.
 the water was very cold.
 there wasn't much snow.
 it was his birthday.
 I'm hungry.
 he takes good care of his pet.
 I'm thirsty.
 he ate too much ice cream and drank cold juice.
 she got a puppy as a birthday present.

Let Us Read and Learn



6 Learn the proverb and think of Russian equivalents.

Every thing is good in its season.

7 These two poems are about winter. Read them, choose the one you like best and learn it,  87.

WINTER

It's winter now, so bundle up tight!¹
 Warm mittens and caps will be just right.
 Ice on the lake, snow on the ground,²
 Time to ski and skate all around.³
 Winter, spring, summer, fall⁴ –
 I like winter best of all.

¹ bundle up tight ['bʌndl ʌp 'taɪt] – хорошо укутайся

² ground [graʊnd] – земля

³ all around ['ɔ:l ə'raʊnd] – вокруг

⁴ fall = autumn

WHEN DOES SNOW BLOW?¹

When does snow blow?
When do flowers² grow?
Is it best to go a little slow
When streets are covered³ with ice and snow?

Let Us Read

8 Read and say what you think of the Little Banana.

THE BIG BANANA AND THE LITTLE BANANA

II

And who is that lady with long yellow hair, big blue eyes, a little white nose, a little red mouth, short arms, short legs, small hands and small feet? Her clothes are so beautiful! And she looks beautiful too!

- It's the Big Banana's sister – the Little Banana.
- But why is she so little?

– Because she is lazy,⁴ she's very, very lazy. She doesn't want to work. That's why she doesn't grow. That's why she is so little – the Little Banana.



Her brother, the Big Banana, takes good care of his sister. He teaches her how to work, how to grow, how to make friends with other fruit and vegetables, but it's a slow business – she doesn't want to. She's

too lazy. She doesn't care about it. The only thing she cares about is – how to look beautiful. She cares a lot only about her clothes. Look what she's wearing today – a white blouse, a long blue skirt, white shoes and a big green hat. She thinks she looks beautiful.

And what do you think?

¹ blow [bləʊ] – дуть, мести

² flower ['flaʊə] – цветок

³ are covered ['kʌvəd] – покрыты

⁴ lazy ['leɪzi] – ленивый

Let Us Talk

- 9 Could you compare the Big Banana and the Little Banana? Which of them do you like best and why?



Let Us Write

- 10 Compare.



Example ▶ *hot – hotter – (the) hottest*

- 1) small, warm, cold, long, short, nice, big;
- 2) bad, good;
- 3) interesting, beautiful.

- 11 Which words are missing? Put in and copy.

- 1) In winter the days are ... than in summer. It's ... in summer than in spring. Summer is the ... season of the year.
- 2) The dog is a ... animal. Monkeys are ... than cats. Elephants and dolphins are the ... animals.

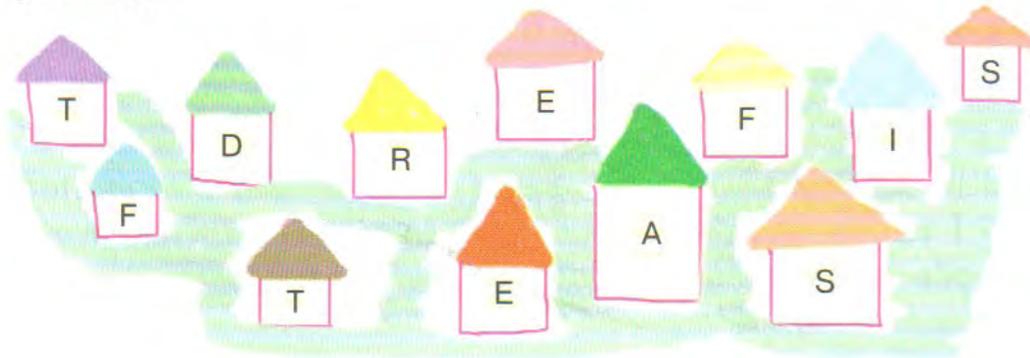
- 12 Learn to write these words.

season, winter, spring, summer, autumn

Puzzle Time



- 13 If you put the letters in the right order you'll get a proverb that you know.



THE ENGLISH YEAR

78. The Seventy-eighth Lesson Lesson Seventy-eight



Let Us Learn

- 1 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  88.
- 2 You've learned the names of winter and spring months. Say what they are.

Example ... is the first (second, third) winter (spring) month.

- 3 This picture can help you speak about one of the seasons of the year.
 - What season is it?
 - How can you prove it?
 - What month do you think it is?
 - Whom can you see in the picture?
 - What are they doing?



- ④ **Can you read quickly? Read all the words as quickly as you can. Then choose and read aloud only the verbs.**

clean, watch, season, drink — drank, winter, buy — bought, make — made, spring, grow — grew, summer, send — sent, celebrate, autumn, open, bring — brought, come — came, weather, write — wrote, see — saw, hot, teach — taught, eat — ate, know — knew, interesting, think — thought, beautiful, go — went, invite, get — got, do — did, have — had, work, read — read, look

- ⑤ **Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.**

November [nəʊ'vembə], in November. — How many days are there in November? — There are thirty days in November. In Russia November is an autumn month. But in Great Britain November is the first winter month. In November it often rains and sometimes snows.

December [dɪ'sembə], in December. My Dad's birthday is in December. — Is December an autumn month? — No, it isn't. In Russia December is the first winter month and in Great Britain December is the second winter month. On the 25th of December English people celebrate Christmas. On the 31st of December people celebrate New Year.

January ['dʒænjʊəri], in January. The first of January is the first New Year's day. January comes after December. — Does it often snow in January? — Yes, it often snows in January. January is the third winter month in Great Britain. In January in Great Britain it snows and rains.

February ['febrʊəri], in February. My birthday is on the twelfth of February. There are twenty-eight or twenty-nine days in February. In Great Britain November, December, January and February are winter months.

[ɒ] not, hot, a lot, **because**, because I like it, because it's cold, because it's interesting. I like winter because in winter I can ski and skate. Willy, put on your warm mittens because the weather is cold.



Let Us Read and Learn

- ⑥ Listen, read and learn the dialogue,  89. Then choose a partner and role-play it.

TALKING ABOUT THE WEATHER

Jim: Hi, Jack! This is Jim. I'm calling¹ from Africa.

Jack: From Africa?! What are you doing in Africa?

Jim: I'm on holiday.

Jack: How's the weather in Africa? Is it hot?

Jim: Terribly hot.

Jack: Are you having a good time?

Jim: No, I'm not. I'm having a terrible time. The weather is terrible here.

Jack: I'm sorry to hear² that.



Let Us Talk

- ⑦ Now talk for Nora and Susan, using the following as a guide.

Nora: Hi, This is I'm calling from

Susan: From ... ? What are you doing in ... ?

Nora: I'm on

Susan: How's the ... in ... ? Is it ... ?

Nora:

Susan: Are you having a good time?

Nora: I'm having a ... time. The weather is ... here.

Susan: I'm ... to hear that.

- ⑧ Pretend you are on holiday in another country. Call your friend and talk about the weather in the country you are in.

¹ to call [kɔ:l] = to telephone

² to hear [hiə] – слышать

Let Us Read

9 Read and say what new information you've learned.

THE ENGLISH YEAR

I

There are four seasons in the year: spring, summer, autumn and winter. The winter months in Great Britain are November, December, January and February. The winter months are cold. In Great Britain in winter it snows and rains.

Let's read about the winter months. There is something in each month.

November. There are 30 days in November. In Great Britain November is the first winter month.

In November in America there is a great holiday – Thanksgiving Day.¹ Families come together² for the day. They decorate the houses with autumn's fruit and flowers and eat traditional³ American food: roast turkey⁴ and pumpkin pie.⁵

December. There are 31 days in December. On the 25th of December there is the greatest holiday of all in England – Christmas



¹ Thanksgiving Day [ˌθæŋksˈɡɪvɪŋ ˈdeɪ] – День благодарения

² together [təˈɡeðə] – вместе

³ traditional [trəˈdɪʃənəl] – традиционный

⁴ roast turkey [ˈrəʊst ˈtɜːki] – жареная индейка

⁵ pumpkin pie [ˈpʌm(p)kɪn ˈpaɪ] – тыквенный пирог

or X-mas. People give each other presents and send Christmas cards. Presents for children are in their stockings.

The traditional English dinner on Christmas Day is roast turkey and Christmas pudding.

The Queen's speech¹ is on television at 3.00 p.m.

During Christmas in Trafalgar Square there is a Christmas tree.

Not all English people celebrate New Year. Those who do celebrate it on the 31st of December. Some people have a New Year party. The party usually begins at eight o'clock in the evening. At twelve o'clock they have a toast to the New Year. The party goes on till² early³ morning.



Let Us Write

10 Write out all the verbs in two forms (see Exercise 4).

11 These are the answers. What are the questions?

- There are four seasons in a year.
- The winter months are: December, January, February.
- Yes, it's cold in winter.
- Yes, it often snows in winter.
- People wear warm clothes because it's cold in winter.

12 Learn to write these words.

November, December, January, February, because

¹ Queen's speech ['kwɪ:nz 'spi:tʃ] – речь королевы

² till [tɪl] – до

³ early ['ɜ:lɪ] – ранний

Puzzle Time



13 Find 11 words.

N	F	e	b	r	u	a	r	y	o	w	g
o	u	w	k	l	s	n	p	z	p	i	k
v	b	J	a	n	u	a	r	y	c	n	t
e	l	f	c	d	m	o	w	p	s	t	s
m	a	u	t	u	m	n	l	a	u	e	e
b	j	k	u	w	e	a	t	h	e	r	a
e	y	m	s	p	r	i	n	g	q	b	s
r	o	p	b	e	c	a	u	s	e	d	o
D	e	c	e	m	b	e	r	y	f	i	n

79. The Seventy-ninth Lesson

Lesson Seventy-nine

Let Us Learn



?

Is there any water in the glass?

Are there any apples on the table?

+

Yes, there is (some).
(Yes,) there is some water in the glass.

Yes, there are some.
Yes, there are some apples on the table.

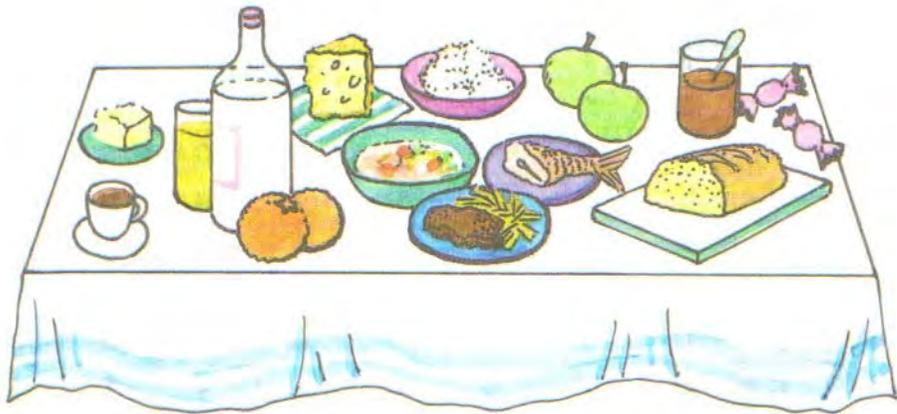
-

No, there isn't
(No,) there is no water in the glass.
There isn't any water in the glass.

No, there aren't
No, there are no apples on the table.
No, there aren't any apples on the table.

① Look at the picture and complete the sentences.

Examples ▶ *There is some There is no*
There are some There are no



② Play a “Memory Game”. Look at the picture for a minute (see Exercise 1), then close it and ask your classmates questions. Let your classmates answer your questions.

Examples ▶ *Is there any ... ?*
Are there any ... ?

③ Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  90.

④ Learn to read the new words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[ɑ:] party, arm, **March**, in March, the 8th of March. My Mother’s birthday is on the 15th of March. March is the first spring month. – What month comes before March? – February does.

[eɪ] say, day, **April**, in April, the first of April, on the first of April. – Is your sister’s birthday in March or in April? – Her birthday is on the fifth of April. April is the second spring month.

[ɑ:] glass, **grass**, green grass, long grass. In spring the grass is green. – What animals eat grass? – Horses, sheep and cows do. They like to eat grass.

[i:] eat, meat, clean, leaf, **a leaf – leaves**, green leaves, small leaves. In spring the leaves on the trees are small and green. Trees with their small green leaves look beautiful in spring.

Let Us Read and Learn

- 5 Listen, read and learn,  91.

SPRING

Spring is here,
Summer is near,
Grass is green,
So nice and clean.
Winter, spring, summer, fall –
I like spring best of all.

Let Us Talk

- 6 Are you a good listener? Let us see. Play the game “A Snowball Story”. Say whatever you can about spring in Great Britain.

Examples

- There are two spring months in Great Britain.
- There are two spring months in Great Britain. They are March, April.
- There are two spring months in Great Britain. They are March and April. March is the first spring month. ...

- 7 Now let's see what you can say about winter. Each of you says a sentence. Then one of you will sum it up.

Let Us Read

- 8 Read and say what English traditions you've learned about.

THE ENGLISH YEAR

II

January. There are 31 days in January. It's fun to see the New Year in. There is a lot of dancing,¹ eating and drinking.

¹ dancing ['dɑ:nsɪŋ] – танцы



There is an interesting New Year tradition: in Scotland¹ you can go “first footing”. That is – you visit friends, so you are the “first foot” of the New Year in their houses. In Scotland the first visitor who comes into a house on New Year’s morning is “the First Foot”.

The Scots² believe³ that the First Foot brings luck⁴ to the family for the New Year.

In Scotland the First Foot must be a man (or a boy), not a woman! And he must have dark hair.



February. There are twenty-eight or twenty-nine days in February. The 14th of February is St Valentine’s Day.⁵

People buy or make Valentine cards and send them to people they love. They don’t sign⁶ their cards – you must guess who sent the cards to you.

¹ Scotland [ˈskɒtlənd] – Шотландия

² the Scots – шотландцы

³ believe [brɪˈli:v] – верить

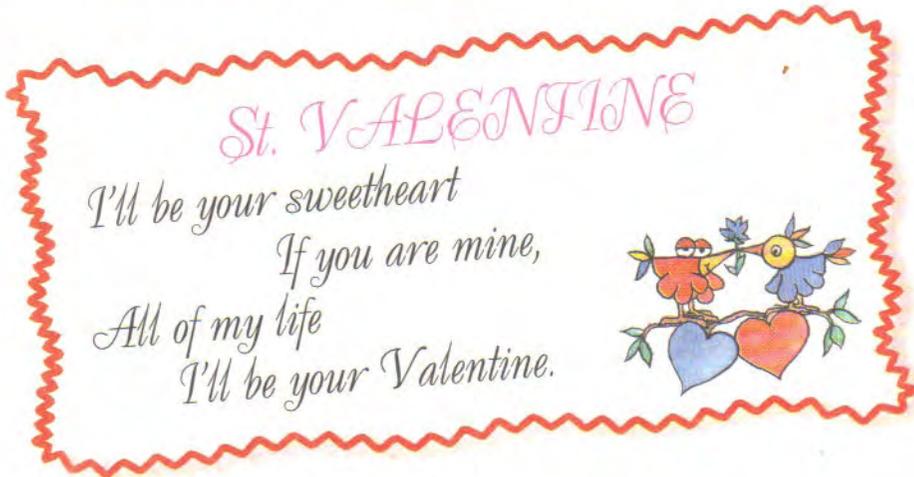
⁴ luck [lʌk] – удача

⁵ St Valentine’s [sntˈvæləntaɪnz] Day – день св. Валентина

⁶ sign [saɪn] – подписывать

Boys and girls, husbands and wives, relatives and friends send cards to each other.

There are different cards to suit all tastes.



Let Us Write

- 9 Write 6 sentences (see Exercises 1, 2).
- 10 Learn to write these words.

March, April, grass, leaf (leaves)



Puzzle Time

11 Put in the right letters to write 12 words.

	F					I			
D							r		
					M				h
g				s			w	s	a
s					r	e			
J						y			
		A				l			
	y								
N							r	g	n

80. The Eightieth **Lesson**
Lesson Eighty

Optional

81. The Eighty-first **Lesson**
Lesson Eighty-one



Let Us Learn

1 You are a magician! Your bag is full of different toys. The children want to know what toys are in your bag. What questions do they ask you?



Example

A: Are there any giraffes in your bag?

Magician: Yes, there are. (No, there aren't.)

- ② **And now play a “Memory Game”. Who remembers what there is in the magician bag?**

Example

There are some ... in the bag.

- ③ **Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.**

[eɪ] say, day, **May**, in May. – Is it warm in May? – Sometimes it's warm in May, sometimes it isn't. In Great Britain May is the first summer month.

[u:] too, tooth, school, pupil, blue, **June**, in June. – How many days are there in June? – There are 30 days in June. June is the first summer month. – How's the weather in June? – It's usually warm in June.

[aɪ] write, eye, tights, right, time, buy, try, my, **July**, in July. – How many days are there in July? – There are 31 days in July. July is the second summer month in our country. It's warmer in July than in June. My granny's birthday is on the twenty-first of July.

- ④ **Say what month comes:**

after: November, December, May, March, June, February;

before: January, April, February, July, March, May.

- ⑤ **Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  92.**

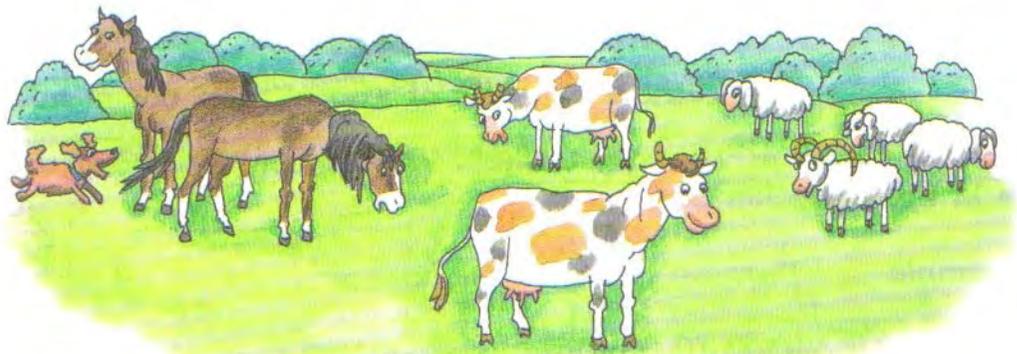
- ⑥ **Whom can you see in the pictures on page 108? Look and say.**

Examples

There are some cows in the

There is no pig in the

There are no tigers in the



Let Us Read and Learn

7 Listen, read and learn,  93.

SUMMER

The summer sun¹ shines² hot and high.
Baby birds now learn to fly.
Green, green leaves and tasty fruit,
All the things are so good!
Winter, spring, summer, fall,
I like summer best of all.

1 the sun [sʌn] – солнце

2 shine [ʃaɪn] – светить, сиять

- 8 Enjoy your English. Listen to the song, read and learn it,  94.

♪ WHEN TREES ARE GREEN ♪

When trees are green and forests are green,
And grass is green and long,
It's good to walk in the forest
And listen to little birds' song.

When trees are white and forests are white,
Because they are covered with snow,
It's good to be out-of-doors¹ and play,
Oh, I love it so!

Let Us Read

- 9 In Great Britain spring months are full of holidays. What are they?

THE ENGLISH YEAR

III

In Great Britain there are two spring months: March and April.

March. There are 31 days in March. In England spring begins at the end of March. The 17th of March is a national² holiday in Ireland³ – St [snt] Patrick's Day. People send greeting cards. On that day people wear a shamrock ['ʃæmrək]. A shamrock is a plant with three leaves. It is the national emblem ['embləm] of Ireland.

In March there is also a holiday for English women – Mother's Day. People in the family try to make it a day off for Mother and help her in any way they can. On that day they visit their mothers and give them some presents. If they can't do that, they send their mothers "A Mother's Day Card".

¹ out-of-doors [ˌaʊtəv'dɔːz] – на свежем воздухе

² national ['næʃənl] – национальный

³ Ireland ['aɪələnd] – Ирландия



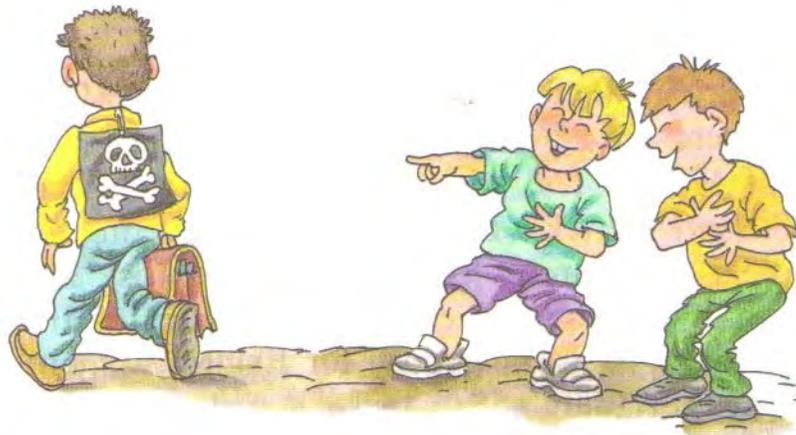
shamrock

April. April is the second spring month. There are 30 days in April. In April or at the end of March English people celebrate Easter¹ Day. They celebrate it as the start of spring or a religious² festival. In England it is time to give and to get presents.

On Easter Sunday children get chocolate Easter eggs or rabbits. You can buy them at any sweet shop in the weeks before Easter.

The Easter holidays are at the end of March and in the first half³ of April. Pupils go back to school after Easter.

In April there is a day for fun – April Fool's Day. It's on the first of April. English children like this day very much. They play jokes⁴ and tricks on other people: other children, parents, friends, relatives, school teachers. One is to tell someone that something is wrong with his dress when in fact⁵ all is in order.⁶



- 1 Easter ['i:stə] – Пасха
- 2 religious [rɪ'lɪdʒəs] – религиозный
- 3 half [hɑ:f] – половина
- 4 joke [dʒəʊk] – шутка
- 5 in fact [ɪn 'fækt] – фактически
- 6 in order [ɪn 'ɔ:də] – в порядке

The English Year

“Oh, Ted, look, your right shoe is on your left foot!” When the boy looks at his feet and sees that he has got the right shoe on the right foot, the one, who is playing the joke, says, “April Fool!” So children play different jokes and tricks.

As you see the first of April is a day for fun.

Let Us Talk



- 10 Say what English holidays you remember. Which of them do you like best and why?

Let Us Write



- 11 Change the words underlined to describe spring.

There are four winter months in Great Britain. They are November, December, January and February. November is the first winter month. In winter the days are short and the nights are long. It's usually cold in winter. In December English people celebrate Christmas.

- 12 Learn to write these words.

May, June, July, some, any

Puzzle Time



- 13 What does the message say? (The key to the code see Lesson 53, “Puzzle Time”.)

1325 61221521189205 1951191514 919 19211313518

82. The Eighty-second Lesson

Lesson Eighty-two



Let Us Learn



?

any + thing = anything

Is there **anything** in the bag?

+

some + thing = something

(Yes,) there is **something** in the bag.

-

no + thing = nothing

(No,) there is **nothing** in the bag.
(No,) there isn't **anything** in the bag.

1 Complete the dialogues:

I

Boy: Is there ... in your hat?

Clown: Yes, there is ... in my hat.

II

Boy: Is there ... in your box?

Clown: No, there isn't ... in my box.



② Disagree.

Examples

- Pam wanted to say something to Pete.
- No, Pam didn't want to say anything to Pete.
- Pam wanted to say nothing to Pete.

They put something into the bag.
Mary took something from the table.
There was something in the box.

③ Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

- [ɒ] box, what, watch, from, sorry, **forest**, a forest – forests, in the forest. The forests are green in summer. It's nice to walk in the forest! I think that forests look beautiful in all the seasons.
- [i:] eat, see, tree, **field**, a field – fields, in the field. Grasshoppers live in the fields. Look! How beautiful the field is!
- [ɔ:] bought, brought, autumn, **August**, in August. There are 31 days in August. May, June, July and August are summer months in Great Britain. – Which is your favourite summer month? – August is.
- [e] seven, clever, eleven, **September**, in September. September is the first autumn month. There are 30 days in September. – Does school start in September? – Yes, it does.
- [əʊ] so, know, grow, those, **October**, in October. October comes after September. – Is it colder in October than in September? – It certainly is. In Great Britain there are two autumn months – September and October.

④ Choose and read the names of winter, spring, summer, autumn months in Great Britain.

October, January, December, June, September, May, July, April, August, November, March, February



Let Us Read and Learn

- 5 Listen, read and learn,  95.

FALL

Put on your jacket and jeans for fall,
Now it's cold to play football!
Leaves turn¹ orange, red and brown,
And they all are falling down.
Winter, spring, summer, fall,
I like fall best of all!



Let Us Read

- 6 Read and say what you have learned about summer and autumn months in Great Britain.

THE ENGLISH YEAR

IV

May, June, July, August. In Great Britain summer begins in May. So there are four summer months. They are May, June, July and August. The weather is usually warm but not always. It is often changeable. The days are long and the nights are short. When the sun is high in the sky² it is hot.

People wear light³ clothes – cotton⁴ shirts, jeans, skirts, T-shirts and light shoes.

In May on the first Monday⁵ English people celebrate the May Day holiday. Big shops are open and some people go shopping.

In June the English people celebrate Father's Day. On that day children send cards and give presents to their fathers.

¹ turn [tɜ:n] – *зд. становятся*

² sky [skaɪ] – *небо*

³ light [laɪt] – *лёгкий*

⁴ cotton ['kɒtn] – *хлопок*

⁵ Monday ['mʌndɪ] – *понедельник*

The English Year

Most people stay in Britain in the summer. In July and August there are lots of things to do: you can go to the parks, to the swimming pools, to the stadiums.

If the weather is fine, there are a lot of people on the beaches.¹ In July and August you can have a very good time.

September, October. Autumn comes in September. Autumn is usually a nice season in England. It is warm and dry.² But it can rain a lot too.

Summer holidays are over in September. The parks, beaches and streets of Britain are very quiet.³ It is time to go back to school. In Great Britain school begins in the second week of September.

On the 31st of October in Great Britain there is a nice holiday for children – Halloween. People put pumpkins on the windowsills.⁴ They draw⁵ eyes, noses and mouths on the pumpkins and put candles into them. So the pumpkin looks like a face.



¹ beach [bi:tʃ] – пляж

² dry [draɪ] – сухой

³ quiet ['kwaɪət] – безлюдный

⁴ windowsill ['wɪndəʊsɪl] – подоконник

⁵ draw [draʊ] – рисовать

Children dress up in funny clothes. They go from house to house and say "Trick or treat".¹ People give them sweets, fruit, cakes, cookies or money.²

This is a nice, funny and "tasty" holiday, isn't it?



Let Us Talk

7 You've read about the English Year. Let's talk about it.

1. How many seasons are there in a year? What are they?
2. What are the spring months in Great Britain and in our country?
3. How many winter months are there in Great Britain? Name them, please.
4. There are three winter months in our country, aren't there? What are they?
5. When does summer begin in Great Britain and in our country?
6. What are the autumn months in Great Britain? And how many autumn months are there in our country?
7. What holidays do English people celebrate: in December, in January, in February, in March, in April, in June, in October?
8. What holidays do we celebrate in our country?
9. When does school begin in Great Britain and in our country?



Let Us Write

- 8 What do you think is the most interesting holiday in Great Britain? What can you write about it?**
- 9 Do Exercises 1 and 2 in writing.**
- 10 Learn to write these words.**

**forest, field, August, September, October, something,
anything, nothing**

¹ trick or treat ['trɪk ə 'tri:t] – угощайте, а то подшутим над вами

² money ['mʌni] – деньги

Puzzle Time



- 11 Write the message and answer the question.

Do English people celebrate Halloween?

83. The Eighty-third Lesson

Lesson Eighty-three

Let Us Learn



?

any + body = anybody
Is there **anybody** in that house?

+

some + body = somebody
(Yes,) there is **somebody** in that house.

-

no + body = nobody
(No,) there is **no-body** in that house.
(No,) there isn't **anybody** in that house.

- 1 What does the fox say?

- There is ... in the house.
- Is there ... in the house?
- There is ... in the house.



2 a) Make up sentences.

There	is was will be	somebody	in the field. in the forest. in the house. at the stadium. in the swimming pool. at the sports ground. at school. at home.
-------	----------------------	----------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

b) Express your doubt.

Example ▶ *Is there anybody ...?*

c) Disagree.

Examples ▶ *There is nobody*
There isn't anybody

3 Put the right words in gaps.

- 1) Yesterday Mum bought ... for me, but I don't know what it is.
- 2) It was night and he couldn't see
- 3) He saw ... because it was night.
- 4) There are ... books on the table, but I don't know how many.
- 5) Were there ... toys in the box? – Yes, there were
- 6) Did you see ... in the field? – No, I saw ... there.
- 7) The boy didn't ask ... to help him make a chair.
- 8) ... came into the house.
- 9) There was ... bread on the table and I asked Mum to give me
- 10) Is there ... coffee in the cup? – No, there isn't. There is ... milk in it.

Let Us Read and Learn



- ④ Listen to the song, read and learn,  96.

WORLD¹ WEATHER

In the North² it's snowing,
And in the South³ it's hot.
In the East the wind is blowing,
And in the West it's not.
In the South the sun is shining,
And in the West the sky is blue.
In the East it's raining,
And in the North it's raining too.

- ⑤ Read and learn the proverb, give the Russian equivalent.

A tree is known⁴ by its fruit.

Let Us Read



- ⑥ Read the dialogue and say what seasons Tom and Ted like and why.

ALL SEASONS ARE BEAUTIFUL

Tom: Do you like autumn, Ted?

Ted: No, I don't. I think it's a dull⁵ season. The grass is yellow. The leaves fall down from the trees. It often rains. It's often cold. No, I don't like autumn. But I do like winter and summer.

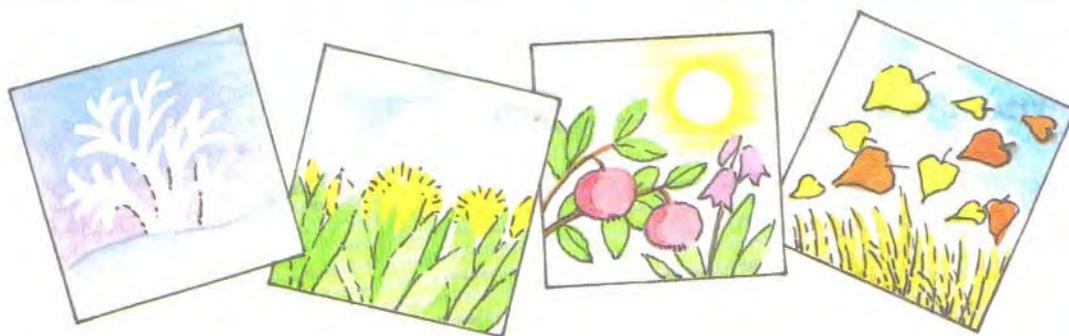
1 world [wɜ:ld] — мир, вселенная

2 North [nɔ:θ] — север

3 South [saʊθ] — юг

4 known [nəʊn] — узнаваемый

5 dull [dʌl] — грустный



Tom: Do you?

Ted: Yes, I do, because in summer the days are longer and warmer and the nights are shorter. And we do not go to school! You can have a lot of fun in summer!

Tom: And why do you like winter, I wonder?

Ted: Oh, in winter you can have a very good time too. You can enjoy¹ skating, skiing, playing snowballs and sledging. Winter is the time for fun! I think that winter is a beautiful season. Forests and fields are white with snow. They look wonderful in winter!

Tom: Well, but I like autumn. I think that forests are more beautiful in autumn than in winter – the leaves in the trees are of different colours – green, yellow, orange, red and brown. They look beautiful! And autumn is a “tasty” season – there are a lot of vegetables and fruit in autumn.

Ted: And what about spring? Do you like it?

Tom: Oh, yes, I like it very much, too. The leaves are small and green. The grass is green, too. It's warm in spring. In spring I usually enjoy the sun because it is not very hot. Well, I think all the seasons are beautiful!



Let Us Talk

7 What is your favourite season and why?

¹ enjoy [in'ʃɔɪ] – получать удовольствие, наслаждаться

Let Us Write



- 8 Write any six sentences (see Exercise 2 a, b, c).
- 9 Learn to write these words.

somebody, anybody, nobody

Puzzle Time



- 10 Complete the crossword. Write the names of months.

4	8				S						
		6			e	7					
		5			p	3					
					t						
				2	e						
		11			m						
10					b						
9					e						
1					r						

84. The Eighty-fourth **Lesson** Eighty-four

Optional

85. The Eighty-fifth **Lesson** Eighty-five

Listening Comprehension Lesson. 97

86. The Eighty-sixth Lesson

Lesson Eighty-six

Review 5

Let Us Talk



- ① Do you know the names of the months of the English year? Name:
 - the winter months;
 - the spring months;
 - the summer months;
 - the autumn months.
- ② Let's have some fun. Now try and name all the months in an alphabetical order.
- ③ Play a game "Nature Lover". The winner is the one who can say more about each season.
- ④ Describe any month of the English year you want for your classmates to guess what month it is. (Don't forget about the holidays!)
- ⑤ You've learned about some English holidays:
 - a) talk about the one that you think is the most interesting;
 - b) let your classmates ask you questions for more information;
 - c) ask your classmates questions about other holidays of the English year.
- ⑥ Think of your own story on the pictures. Let your classmates think of a title for your story.





- 7 You've learned 6 poems and 2 songs (Lessons 79–85). Recite the poem and sing the song you like best.

Let Us Read

- 8 Right or wrong? Choose and read aloud what's right.

There are twelve months in a year.

In Great Britain there are three summer months.

There are 30 days in June.

June comes after August.

In Great Britain May is the first summer month.

There are twenty-eight days in January.

There are twenty-eight or twenty-nine days in February.

There are two seasons in Great Britain.

Winter is the coldest season of the year.

In winter in Great Britain it rains and snows.



People celebrate Christmas on the 23rd of December.
Halloween is on the 31st of October.

⑨ Read and say why Londoners like to go to the parks.

LONDON'S PARKS

London is a very big city.¹ More than eight million people live in London.

London is a green city. There are a lot of parks in London. The biggest parks are: Hyde [haɪd] Park, St James's Park and Regent's [ˈri:dʒənts] Park.

London's famous² Zoo is in Regent's Park. In the Zoo there are animals and birds from different countries and continents [ˈkɒntɪnənts]. There you can see crocodiles and monkeys, elephants and giraffes, lions and tigers and a lot of other animals. You can give bananas to the monkeys! The English enjoy visiting the Zoo.

In English parks you can do lots of things and have a very good time: you can sit on the green grass, you can play football and other games, ride horses, watch ducks, you can walk or have a quiet talk with your friends or read your book. Londoners love their parks!

⑩ Are the sentences *true* or *false*?

There are ten big parks in London.

London's famous Zoo is in St James's Park.

There are different animals and birds from different countries and continents in London's Zoo.

You can play games in the parks in London.

Londoners don't like their parks.

You can give bananas to the monkeys in the Zoo.

¹ city [ˈsɪti] — большой город

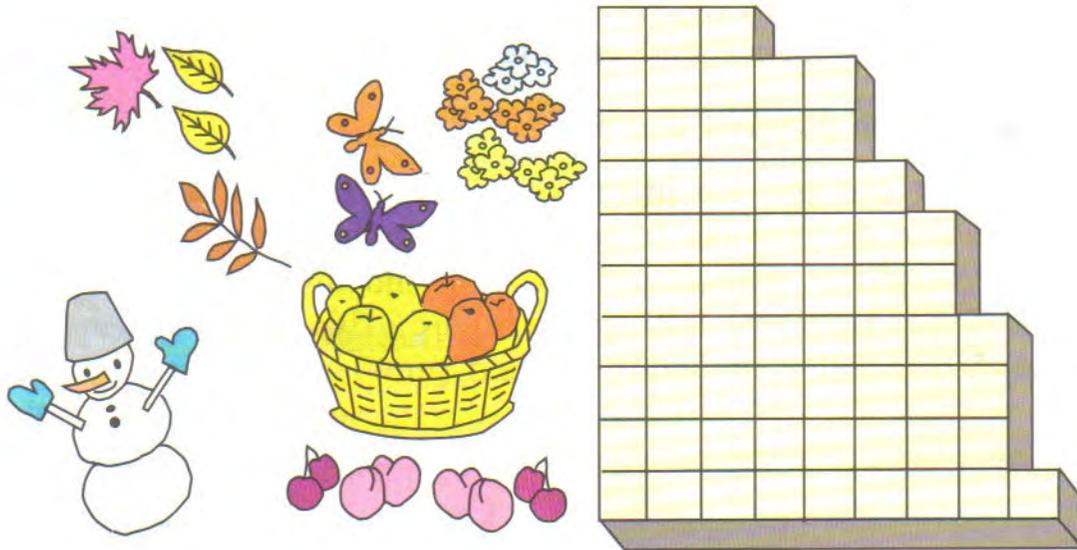
² famous [ˈfeɪməs] — известный

Let Us Write

- 11 You've thought of a story on the pictures (see Exercise 6). If it's a good story, write it down. If it's not – think of another one.

Puzzle Time

- 12 Which names of 10 months do you need to build up the "ladder"?



87. The Eighty-seventh **Lesson**
Lesson Eighty-seven
Text "Halloween"

Lesson 13 for
Home Reading

88. The Eighty-eighth **Lesson**
Lesson Eighty-eight
Text "Trick or Treat"

Lesson 14 for
Home Reading

NATURE

89. The Eighty-ninth Lesson Lesson Eighty-nine



Let Us Learn

- 1 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  98.
- 2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions:
 - What can you see in the pictures?
 - Where do you like to spend your holidays?
 - Where does your friend like to spend his (her) holidays?
 - Where were you last summer?
 - Where will your family go next summer and why?



3 Make the sentences complete.

1. Do you like to swim in the ... or in the ...? 2. I like to swim in the The water in the Black ... is warm in summer. 3. He knows the names of the four 4. Last summer the Browns lived near the 5. Will you go to the ... next summer?

Let Us Read and Learn



4 Listen, read and learn, 99. Then act it out.

Jack: Hello, Mike! Did you have a good holiday?

Mike: Yes, thanks. Did you?

Jack: Yes, **lovely**.¹

Mike: Ah, well. Back to school now. **Ready**² for work?

5 Listen, read and learn, 100.

BUTTERFLY³

Butterfly, butterfly,
Where do you fly,
So quickly and high,
In the blue, blue sky?



Let Us Read



6 Read and say how Bob took care of the animals.

ON A FARM

Bob is a little boy. He is seven. He lives in a town.⁴ His uncle Mr Smith lives in the country.⁵ He has got a big farm. Mr Smith invited Bob to spend his summer holidays with him on the farm.

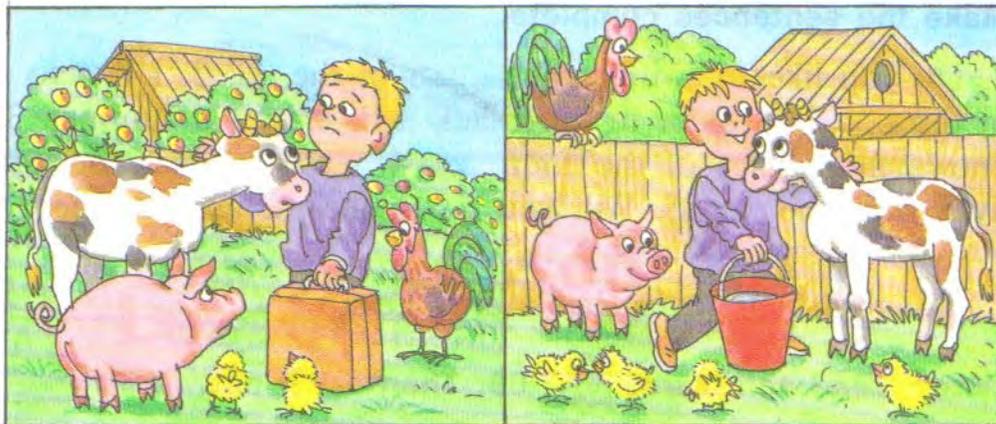
¹ lovely ['lʌvli] – великолепный, прелестный

² ready ['redi] – готовый

³ butterfly ['bʌtəflaɪ] – бабочка

⁴ in a town [ɪn ə 'taʊn] – в городе

⁵ in the country [ɪn ðə 'kʌntri] – в деревне, за городом



For the first time in his life Bob saw so many domestic animals: horses, cows, sheep, pigs, ducks, hens, chickens and some others.

He wanted to see everything. Bob's uncle had a lot of work to do on his farm. He usually got up at five o'clock in the morning. Bob wanted to help his uncle in his work.

One day Mr Smith asked Bob to take care of a little calf.¹ Bob was happy. The calf was so nice, it was very little and funny. It had long legs. Its eyes were big and brown. They were so beautiful!

Bob gave the calf some milk to drink and some bread and other things to eat. He took him for a walk in the morning and in the afternoon. Bob took good care of the calf and the calf grew very quickly. Bob liked the calf very much. And the calf liked him too. It always went with Bob wherever² Bob went. Soon they became³ very good friends.

Bob learned to take care of the other animals on the farm, too.

When it was time to go back to town, Bob was very sorry. He went with his uncle to see all the animals and to say goodbye to them. He was sure that the animals were sorry too and that they said goodbye to him in their animal language.⁴

7 Choose and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the pictures.

¹ calf [kɑ:f] – телёнок

² wherever [weə'evə] – куда бы ни

³ became [bi'keɪm] – стали, сделались

⁴ language ['læŋgwɪdʒ] – язык



Let Us Talk

- 8 Choose a partner and talk about your last summer holidays.
- 9 Tell your classmates about your plans for your summer holidays.

Let Us Write



- 10 Make the sentences complete.

1) In winter the days are ... than in summer. 2) It's ... in summer than in spring. 3) Summer is the ... season of the year. 4) ... is the coldest season of the year. 5) In ... the ... fall down from the 6) I think it's ... in the forest in autumn. 7) It's warm in ... and in

- 11 Write the opposites.

Example ▶ close – open

large, in the morning, wrong, summer, night, cold

Puzzle Time



- 12 Read the secret message and answer the question.

Ho wmanyoce ansa rethereont heearth?

90. The Ninetieth Lesson

Lesson Ninety

Let Us Learn



- 1 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[1] kitten, winter, visit, **river**, a river – rivers, a long river. There is a long river near our country house. — On what river does London stand? — London stands on the river Thames [temz].

English people often call this river “Father Thames”. And Russian people call the Volga river “Matushka-Volga”. – Do you like to swim in the river or in the lake? – I like to swim in the river.
 [i:] season, eat, meat, **sea**, a sea – seas, the Black Sea, the White Sea. In summer we usually go to the Black Sea. When we lived near the sea I learned to swim. The water in the Black Sea is usually warm in summer.

ocean [ˈəʊʃn], an ocean – oceans, four oceans. – Do you know the names of all the oceans? – Yes, I know the names of the four oceans.

2 Say where they went for their last summer holiday.

The Browns	was	near	in the river.
Helen	were	to	the lake.
My uncle	went	in	the Black Sea.
Our family			the ocean.
My friend’s family			South America. London.

3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  101.

4 Look at the picture and answer the questions:



- What can you see in the picture?
 What is there near the lake?
 What is there near the field?
 Whom can you see in the field?
 What are the cows and the sheep doing?
 What is the dog doing?
 What colour are the sheep (the cows, the ducks, the dog)?
 What season is it? Why do you think so?

- 5 Now you ask your classmates questions on the picture. Let them answer your questions.

Let Us Read and Learn



- 6 Enjoy your English. Listen, read, learn and sing the song,  102.

LITTLE CABIN¹ IN THE WOOD²

Little cabin in the wood.
 Little man by the window stood.
 Little rabbit hopping by,
 Knocking³ at the door.⁴
 “Help me, help me, sir!” he said.
 “For the farmer bobs⁵ my head.”
 “Come on in,” the little man said,
 “Warm up by the fire.”⁶

¹ cabin [ˈkæbɪn] – хижина

² wood = forest

³ knock [nɒk] – стучать

⁴ door [dɔː] – дверь

⁵ bob [bɒb] – зд. оторвать

⁶ fire [ˈfaɪə] – огонь



Let Us Read

- 7 Read the tale and prove that the bird is clever.

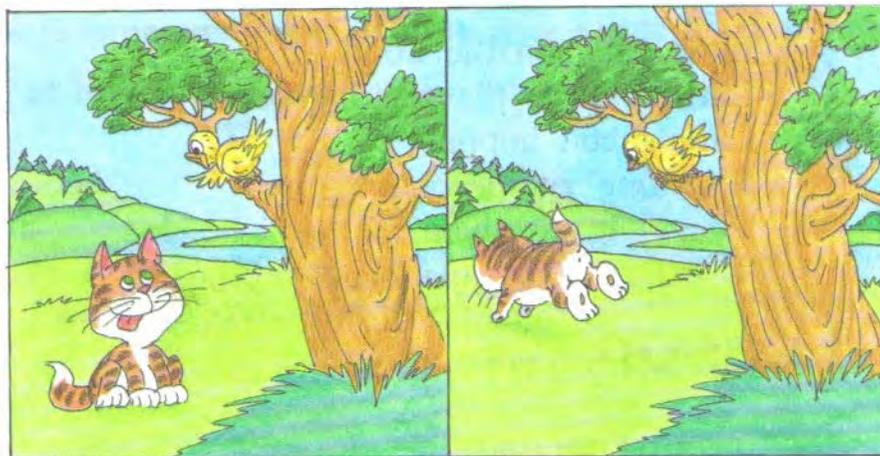
A CLEVER BIRD

It was a fine spring day. A little bird sat in a tree singing a song. A big grey cat saw the bird. He wanted to eat it.

So he came up to the tree and said, "Good morning, dear! Come down from the tree! Come here! I want to say something to you." "Say what you want. I shall not come down," said the bird. "Do you know that all the animals and birds are good friends now? I like you very much. Come down. We shall play," said the cat. "No, thank you," said the clever bird. "I like it here, high up in the tree. From here I can see green fields and forests, beautiful lakes and rivers. Now I see a lot of dogs. They are running here."

"Oh, goodbye then. I must run away now."

"Why?" said the little bird. "Don't you know that all the animals are good friends now?"



Let Us Talk

- 8 Describe the pictures (see Exercise 7).
- 9 The tale is interesting, isn't it? Tell it at home.
- 10 Do you know any tales about clever animals? Tell one of them to your classmates.



Let Us Write

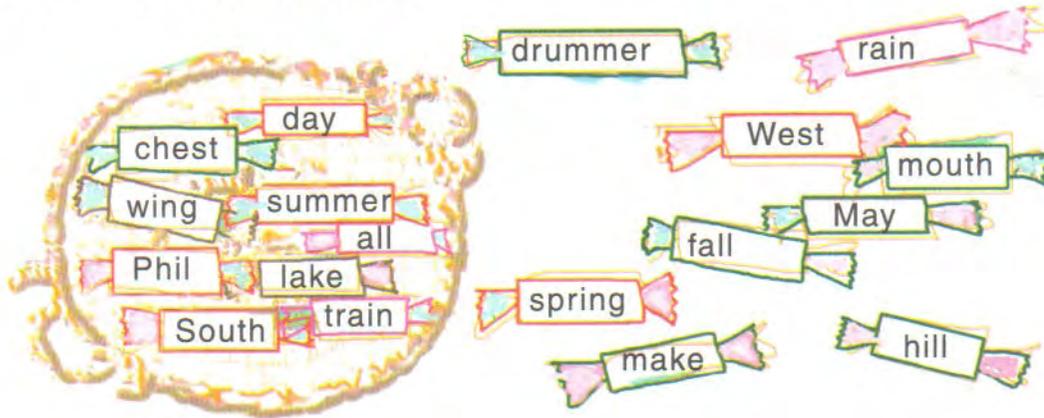
- 11 Make up sentences (see Exercise 2). Write them down.
- 12 Learn to write these words.

river, sea, ocean

Puzzle Time



- 13 Find the rhyming twins.



91. The Ninety-first Lesson

Lesson Ninety-one

Let Us Learn



- 1 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[3:] girl, bird, third, **earth**, the earth. The earth is very, very big. On the earth. People live on the earth. – How many oceans are there on the earth? – There are four oceans on the earth. There are a lot of rivers and lakes on the earth.

[ɪ] his, pig, big, **hill**, a hill – hills. Is there a lake near the hill? To ski down the hills. I like to ski down the hills in winter. Can you see those green hills near the river?

[aʊ] house, mouse, mouth, **mountain**, a mountain – mountains, high mountains. – Which is higher a hill or a mountain? – A mountain, of course! There are no high mountains in Great Britain. – What is the highest mountain on the earth? – I think, Everest is.

2 Give Jane's answers to Phil's questions.

Phil: Hello, Jane! Did you have a good holiday?

Jane:

Phil: Were you in the mountains?

Jane:

Phil: Where were you then?

Jane:

Phil: How was the weather there?

Jane:

3 One of you is Phil, the other is Jane. Act out the conversation. Change over.

4 Think of some more questions which Phil could ask Jane.

5 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  103.

6 Try and read the new words.

nature ['neɪtʃə]

food – **the moon**

farm – **star**

7 a) Ask your classmates questions on the pictures. (See page 135.)

b) Think of some wrong statements on the pictures.

c) Describe the pictures.



Let Us Read and Learn

- 8 Enjoy your English. Listen, read, learn and sing the song,  104.

 *A SAILOR¹ WENT TO SEA* 

A sailor went to sea, sea, sea
 To see what he could see, see, see.
 But all that he could see, see, see
 Was the blue, blue sea, sea, sea.

¹ sailor ['seɪlə] – моряк





Let Us Read

- 9 Read the text and say why children like to spend their holidays at their grandfather's.¹

AT MY GRANDFATHER'S

My sister and I enjoy living in the country, that is why we usually spend our summer holidays at our grandfather's. He lives and works in the forest – he is a forester. He lives in a small house. He has a garden.² Different plants grow in his garden.



It's very beautiful there. There is a lake near the house. The lake is full of fish. Near the lake there are high green hills and large fields. A lot of different flowers grow in the fields. The forest is full of mushrooms³ and berries.⁴ Different birds and animals live on the hills and in the forest. Grandfather knows and loves them all. He knows a lot of things about animals: where they live in winter and in summer, what they eat, what they like to do, how they teach their children and play with them.

¹ at ... grandfather's – у дедушки

² garden ['gɑ:dn] – сад

³ mushroom ['mʌʃrʊm] – гриб

⁴ berry ['berɪ] – ягода

He knows all about birds, too. When a bird is singing he can say what bird it is. In winter, when there is not much food to eat in the forest, he gives the birds something to eat.

Grandfather likes the forest. He always says that the forest is full of wonders.

We like to listen to grandfather's stories about the forest's wonders.

- 10 Choose and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the picture.

Let Us Talk



- 11 Describe the picture (see Exercise 9).
 12 Tell about the place where you lived in summer.

Let Us Write



- 13 What can you write about the picture (see Exercise 9)?
 14 Learn to write these words.

earth, hill, mountain, nature, star, the moon

Puzzle Time



- 15 If you arrange the letters in the right order you will read an English proverb that you know.

H R S E B M T
 E O T W S S
 O I E S A E

92. The Ninety-second **Lesson**
Lesson Ninety-two

Optional

93. The Ninety-third **Lesson**
Lesson Ninety-three

*Listening
Comprehension
Lesson.  105*

94. The Ninety-fourth **Lesson**
Lesson Ninety-four

Review 6



Let Us Talk

- ① What words do you remember to describe seasons? The winner is the one who is the last to name a word.
- ② Try and prove that the following statements are true.
 - Summer is the best season of a year.
 - You can have a lot of fun in winter.
 - Autumn is a dull season.
 - Autumn is a colourful season.
 - Autumn is a “tasty” season.
 - In spring nature awakens¹ from her long winter sleep.
 - Nature is full of wonders.
- ③ You had a very good time last summer, didn't you? Tell your classmates about your holidays. Be ready to answer their questions.

¹ awaken [ə'weɪkən] – пробуждаться

4 What do the photos tell you?



5 You've learned a lot about the English year. Tell your granny about it (don't forget about English holidays).

6 You've learned 7 poems and 4 songs (Lessons 79–85). Recite the poem and sing the song you like best.

Let Us Read

7 Read about the planet you live on.

THE EARTH

We live on the earth. It is very, very big. There is a lot of water on the earth. It is in rivers, lakes, seas and oceans. There are a lot of forests and fields, hills and mountains on it.

The earth is full of wonders. Different animals live on the earth. Different plants grow on it.

The earth is beautiful.



There are large countries and small countries. There are warm countries and cold countries. There are some countries where there are four seasons in a year and some countries where there are only two.

When it is day in one country it is night in another country.

When the sun shines it is day, when the sun does not shine it is night. You can see the moon and the stars in the sky at night.

People live in different countries. They speak different languages.

Our country is one of the largest countries in the world. It is so large that when it is morning in the east, it is evening in the west.

There are a lot of long rivers, beautiful lakes, large forests and fields and high mountains in our country.

People who live in our country speak more than two hundred different languages.

8 Answer the questions.

Where do people live? Is the earth big or small? What is there on the earth? Where is there water on the earth? How many oceans are there on the earth? What are the forests full of? What are the oceans full of? What is there on the mountains? The earth is beautiful, isn't it? Why? How do you know that the earth is big? Why do we say that the earth is full of wonders? When can you see the sun in the sky? When can you see the moon in the sky? Are there a lot of countries in the world? What languages do people in different countries speak? What country do you live in? What is the largest country in the world?

9 Speak about the country you live in.

- 10 Read the joke and say if the boy is a good pupil.

WHICH IS NEARER TO US?

Teacher: Which is nearer to us, America or the moon?

Pupil: The moon.

Teacher: The moon? Why do you think so?

Pupil: Because we can see the moon and we can't see America.

Let Us Write



- 11 Write about something that you like.

95. The Ninety-fifth **Lesson**
Lesson Ninety-five
 Text "Stone Soup"

Lesson 15 for
 Home Reading

96. The Ninety-sixth **Lesson**
Lesson Ninety-six
 Text "English Ways"

Lesson 16 for
 Home Reading

97. The Ninety-seventh **Lesson**
Lesson Ninety-seven

Optional

98. The Ninety-eighth **Lesson**
Lesson Ninety-eight

Listening
 Comprehension
 Lesson.  106

99. The Ninety-ninth **Lesson**
Lesson Ninety-nine

Optional



Puzzle Time: Keys

Все ли ты отгадал в разделе **Puzzle Time**? Вот ответы:

Lesson 41: (1) fox, (2) bear.

Lesson 42: pet, clever, short, yesterday, look, teach, toy, only, neck, long, tail, shop, open, party, put.

Lesson 45: 1. ears, 2. head, 3. nose, 4. mouth, 5. hands, 6. face, 7. hair, 8. eyes.

Lesson 51: crocodile, cow, horse, monkey, dog, tiger, lion, elephant, goat, cat.

Lesson 52: He has got black hair, blue eyes, a long nose, a short neck.

Lesson 53: My favourite animal is a lion.

Lesson 54: (1) an elephant, (2) a mouse.

Lesson 59: interesting, girl, left, tea, apple, egg, glass, shoulder, right, tail, leg, grey, yellow, week, kitten, now, wolf, foot, toe.

Lesson 60: big – pig, take – make, silk – milk, talk – walk, look – book, life – wife, carrot – parrot, bear – wear, box – fox, boy – toy, now – how, peck – neck, cat – cap, foot – boot, food – good.

Lesson 61: sweater.

Lesson 62: 1) cap, 2) hat, 3) shoe, 4) boot, 5) jeans, 6) jacket, 7) sweater, 8) trousers.

Lesson 67: 1. shirt, 2. shorts, 3. boots, 4. blouse, 5. sweater, 6. jeans, 7. skirt, 8. shoes.

Lesson 68: The right thing in the right place.

Lesson 69: 1. blouse, 2. jacket, 3. T-shirt, 4. socks, 5. shorts, 6. coat, 7. tights.

Lesson 70: I love my mother dearly.

Lesson 73: night – right, near – ear, skirt – shirt, big – pig, blouses – trousers, let – pet, there – wear, wrong – long, farm – arm, my – eye, bought – taught, thought – short.

Lesson 76: autumn.

Lesson 77: Tastes differ.

Lesson 78: February, winter, January, season, summer, because, spring, autumn, weather, December, November.

Lesson 79: January, February, March, April, November, December, winter, spring, summer, autumn, leave, grass.

Lesson 81: My favourite season is summer.

Lesson 82: Do English people celebrate Halloween?

Lesson 83: 1. January, 2. February, 3. March, 4. April, 5. May, 6. June, 7. July, 8. August, 9. October, 10. November, 11. December.

Lesson 86: May, April, March, August, October, January, November, December, February, September.

Lesson 89: How many oceans are there on the earth?

Lesson 90: Phil – hill, lake – make, day – May, train – rain, all – fall, wing – spring, summer – drummer, South – mouth, chest – West.

Lesson 91: East or West home is best.

Reference Grammar¹

Имя существительное (The Noun)

§ 1. **Существительные** в английском языке, как и в русском, обозначают **одушевленные** (a girl, a cat) и **неодушевленные** предметы (a toy, a book), вещества (milk, bread) и явления природы (snow, rain). Они бывают **исчисляемые** (a girl, a toy) и **неисчисляемые** (milk, rain).

Перед одушевленными и неодушевленными исчисляемыми существительными ставится особое слово — артикль: **a (an)** перед существительными только в единственном числе (**an** перед существительными, начинающимися с гласной), **the** — в единственном и во множественном числе:

a boy — the boy	boys — the boys
an apple — the apple	apples — the apples

Неопределенный артикль употребляется, если имеется в виду любой предмет из ему подобных:

Give me **a** toy. Дай мне игрушку (любую).

Определенный артикль обозначает, что имеется в виду конкретный, определенный предмет:

Give me **the** toy. Дай мне игрушку (именно эту).

Перед неисчисляемыми существительными, обозначающими вещества и явления, неопределенный артикль обычно не ставится (а определенный может употребляться):

work — **the** work
rain — **the** rain

¹ Reference Grammar — Грамматический справочник

Артикль не употребляется перед именами, фамилиями, названиями городов и стран:

Ann, Pete, Brown, London, Moscow, England, Great Britain

Но следует запомнить, что определенный артикль, как правило, употребляется со следующими словами:

the sun, **the** moon, **the** sky, **the** earth

§ 2. Большинство существительных имеют два числа: **единственное** и **множественное**. Множественное число образуется при помощи окончания **-s** или **-es**, которое произносится как [s], [z], [ɪz]:¹

[s]	[z]	[ɪz]
<i>после глухих согласных</i>	<i>после звонких согласных и гласных</i>	<i>после шипящих и свистящих</i>
cats books pets	dogs days tables	boxes dresses

Некоторые существительные образуют множественное число не по правилам, и их нужно запомнить: **a man – men, a woman – women, a child – children, a mouse – mice, a foot – feet, a sheep – sheep**

Существительные, обозначающие вещества, явления, не употребляются во множественном числе:

much/a lot of **milk (water, bread, tea, snow, work ...)**

Особенности правописания существительных во множественном числе:

-f → v + -es

a leaf – leaf**es**
a wife – wife**s**
a wolf – wolf**es**

-y → i + -es

(если перед “y” стоит согласная)

a country – countr**ies**
a family – famil**ies**
a party – part**ies**
но: a day – day**s**

¹ Следует запомнить: **a house** [haʊs] – **houses** [ˈhaʊzɪz].

§ 3. В английском языке существительные не изменяются по падежам и только одушевленные существительные имеют два падежа: **общий** и **притяжательный**. Притяжательный падеж образуется путем добавления 's к существительному в единственном числе и знака апострофа ' к существительному во множественном числе:

the pupil's book – книга ученика
 the pupils' books – книги учеников

Окончание 's произносится как [s], [z], [ɪz]:

[s]	[z]	[ɪz]
<i>после глухих согласных</i>	<i>после звонких согласных и гласных</i>	<i>после шипящих и свистящих</i>
Jack's cat the cat's nose the cats' tails	Ann's dog the father's book the pupils' books	George's book the mouse's tail the tortoises' legs

Если существительное образует множественное число не по правилам, то в притяжательном падеже прибавляется 's (как и в единственном числе):

men's hats – мужские шляпы
 women's dresses – женские платья
 children's books – детские книги

Имя прилагательное (The Adjective)

Прилагательные в английском языке не изменяются по числам и падежам, но, так же как и в русском языке, имеют три степени сравнения: **положительную**, **сравнительную** и **превосходную**. Сравнительная степень односложных и двусложных прилагательных образуется с помощью суффикса **-er**, превосходная – **-est**:

small – smaller – (the) smallest
 clever – cleverer – (the) cleverest

Многосложные прилагательные образуют сравнительную степень при помощи слова *more*, превосходную степень при помощи слова *most*:

beautiful – **more** beautiful – (the) **most** beautiful
interesting – **more** interesting – (the) **most** interesting

Следует запомнить особые случаи образования степеней сравнения прилагательных:

good – **better** – (the) **best**
bad – **worse** – (the) **worst**

Особенности правописания степеней сравнения прилагательных:

– неизносимая немая “e” опускается и прибавляется **-er, -est**:

nice – nic**er** – (the) nic**est**
large – larg**er** – (the) larg**est**

– в односложных прилагательных согласная удваивается после кратких гласных:

big – bigg**er** – (the) bigg**est**
hot – hott**er** – (the) hott**est**

– конечная “y” после согласной меняется на “i”:

happ**y** – happi**er** – (the) happi**est**
funn**y** – funni**er** – (the) funni**est**

Имя числительное (The Numeral)

§ 1. В английском языке, как и в русском, есть **количественные и порядковые числительные**.

Количественные числительные от 13 до 19 образуются прибавлением суффикса **-teen**:

four – four**teen**
nine – nine**teen**

Числительные **thirteen** и **fifteen** изменяют орфографию в основе слова (сравни: **three, five**).

Числительные, обозначающие десятки от 20 до 90, образуются путем прибавления суффикса **-ty**:

seven – seven **ty**

nine – nine **ty**

Числительные **twenty, thirty, forty, fifty** изменяют орфографию в основе слова (*сравни: two, three, four, five*).

Порядковые числительные, кроме **first, second, third**, образуются от соответствующих количественных числительных путем прибавления суффикса **-th (-eth)**:

six – six **th**

thirty-seven – thirty-seven **th**

Суффикс **-eth** прибавляется к числительным, оканчивающимся на **-ty**, при этом “**y**” меняется на “**i**”:

thir**ty** – thirti**eth**

§ 2. Чтение сложных числительных и дат:

500 people – five hundred people

705 books – seven hundred and five books

in 1905 – in nineteen o [əv] five

in 1917 – in nineteen seventeen

September 5th, 1999 – September the fifth, nineteen ninety-nine; the fifth of September, nineteen ninety-nine.

Местоимение (The Pronoun)

В английском языке есть **личные, притяжательные, указательные, неопределенные** и другие местоимения.

Личные (*кто? кого? кому? кем? о ком?*)

Единственное число

I – me

he – him

she – her

it – it

Множественное число

we – us

you – you

they – them

Притяжательные (чей? чья? чье?)

Единственное число

(I) – **my**
(he) – **his**
(she) – **her**
(it) – **its**

Множественное число

(we) – **our**
(you) – **your**
(they) – **their**

Указательные

Единственное число

this
that

Множественное число

these
those

Неопределенные

some, any, no и их производные
some – something – somebody
any – anything – anybody
no – nothing – nobody

В английском языке в отрицательном предложении может быть только одно отрицание:

There is **no** milk in the cup.
There **isn't** any milk in the cup.
I saw **nobody** in the room.
I **didn't** see **anybody** in the room.

Глагол (The Verb)

§ 1. В русском языке у глагола есть три времени: **настоящее, прошедшее и будущее**, а в английском языке времен больше. В третьем классе нужно знать и уметь правильно употреблять четыре времени: **the simple present tense** (настоящее неопределенное время): “I **read** every day”; **the simple past tense** (прошедшее неопределенное время): “I **read** [red] yesterday”; **the future tense** (будущее время): “I **shall read** tomorrow”; **the present continuous tense** (настоящее продолженное время): “I **am reading** now”.

§ 2. **Simple present** употребляется для выражения действия, которое происходит *всегда, постоянно, обычно*; часто со словами **usually, always, often, every day (week, month, year, Sunday ...)** и другими, которые всегда стоят перед смысловым глаголом или в конце предложения, но после глагола *to be*:

We **always go** to the country in summer.
 The pupils **speak** English **every day**.
 He **is often** late.

В 3-м лице единственного числа к глаголу прибавляется окончание **-s** или **-es**, которое читается как [s], [z], [ɪz]:

[s]	[z]	[ɪz]
<i>после глухих согласных</i>	<i>после звонких согласных и гласных</i>	<i>после шипящих и свистящих</i>
works helps takes	falls goes becomes	dresses watches

He **watches** TV every evening.
 She usually **helps** her granny about the house.

Особенности правописания глаголов в 3-м лице единственного числа:

– в глаголах, оканчивающихся на “**y**” с предшествующей согласной, “**y**” меняется на “**i**” и добавляется окончание **-es**:

to try – he (she, it) **tries**
 Но: to play – he (she, it) **plays**

– в глаголах, оканчивающихся на “**o**”, прибавляется **-es**:

to go – he (she, it) **goes**
 to do – he (she, it) **does**

Вопросительная и отрицательная формы образуются с помощью вспомогательного глагола **do (does)**.

Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма
I work.	Do I work?	I do not work.
He } She } works.	Does { he } { she } work?	He } She } does not work.
It } We } You } work.	Do { we } { you } work?	We } You } do not work.
They }	{ they }	They }

§ 3. **Simple past** употребляется для выражения *действия* или *состояния*, имевшего место в *прошлом* и не связанного с *настоящим моментом*, часто со словами **yesterday, ago, last week (month, year, summer, Sunday ...)** и с указанием дат: in 1941, in 1990 и т. д.:

Yesterday my father and I **went** to the swimming pool.

The boys **played** hockey **last Sunday**.

In 1997 our family **lived** in Kiev.

Last week we **saw** an interesting play at the Children's Theatre.

В английском языке различают **правильные** и **неправильные** глаголы. **Правильные** глаголы образуют прошедшее время путем добавления окончания **-ed** или **-d**, которое читается как [t], [d], [ɪd]:

[t]	[d]	[ɪd]
<i>после глухих согласных</i>	<i>после звонких согласных и гласных</i>	<i>после букв t, d</i>
dressed helped danced	opened played answered	counted wanted collected

Особенности правописания **правильных** глаголов:

— конечная согласная удваивается в односложных и двусложных глаголах с краткой гласной:

skip — **skipped**

stop — **stopped**

hop — **hopped**

— в глаголах, оканчивающихся на “y” с предшествующей гласной, “y” меняется на “i” и добавляется окончание **-ed**:

try — **tried**

cry — **cried**

Но: play — **played**

Формы simple past **неправильных** глаголов следует запомнить:

become — **became**

get — **got**

know — **knew**

Вопросительная и отрицательная формы образуются с помощью вспомогательного глагола **did**.

Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма
I He She It We You They } helped/went.	Did { I he she it we you they } help/go?	I He She It We You They } did not help/go.

§ 4. Future употребляется для выражения *действия* или *состояния* в будущем; часто со словами **tomorrow, next week (Sunday, month, year ...)**. Оно образуется при помощи вспомогательных глаголов **shall** для 1-го лица единственного и множественного числа и **will** во всех остальных случаях:

We **shall** go to the sea next month.
 My friend **will** visit his granny tomorrow.

Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма
I shall He } She } will It } } work. We shall You } They } will	Shall I Will { he { she { it } work? Shall we Will { you { they	I shall He } She } will It } } not work. We shall You } They } will

§ 5. **Present continuous** употребляется для выражения действия, которое происходит в настоящее время, в момент речи. Оно образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола *to be* в формах настоящего времени (*am, is, are*) и добавления *-ing* к смысловому глаголу:

I **am reading** an interesting book **now**.
 He **is writing** a letter to his friend.
 They **are playing** hockey.

Особенности правописания:

— конечная согласная удваивается в односложных и двусложных глаголах с предшествующей краткой гласной:

sit — **sitting**
 swim — **swimming**
 begin — **beginning**

— немое “e” не пишется перед **-ing**:

write — **writing**
 make — **making**
 take — **taking**

Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма
I am He } is She } It } working. We } You } are They }	Am I { he Is { she { it working? { we Are { you { they	I am He } is She } not working. It } We } are You } They }

§ 6. Повелительное наклонение в английском языке, как и в русском, употребляется для выражения **просьб, приказаний, приглашений, запрещений**. Оно имеет две формы: утвердительную и отрицательную.

Утвердительная форма	Отрицательная форма
Stand up! Give it to me, please. Let's go there!	Don't stand up! Don't give it to me, please! Let us not go there!

Наречие (The Adverb)

В английском языке **наречие** часто образуется от прилагательных при помощи прибавления суффикса **-ly**:

quick – quick**ly**

slow – slow**ly**

bad – bad**ly**

Но: good – **well**

Contents

PETS AND OTHER ANIMALS

Lesson 45	4
Lesson 46	9
Lesson 47. Listening Comprehension Lesson	
Lesson 48. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 49. Lesson 9 for Home Reading	
Lesson 50. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 51	15
Lesson 52	21
Lesson 53	27
Lesson 54. Review 3	34
Lesson 55. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 56. Listening Comprehension Lesson	
Lesson 57. Lesson 10 for Home Reading	
Lesson 58. <i>Optional</i>	

CLOTHING

Lesson 59	40
Lesson 60	45
Lesson 61	50
Lesson 62	54
Lesson 63. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 64. Listening Comprehension Lesson	
Lesson 65. Lesson 11 for Home Reading	
Lesson 66. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 67	59
Lesson 68	65
Lesson 69	71
Lesson 70	76
Lesson 71. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 72. Listening Comprehension Lesson	
Lesson 73. Review 4	81

Lesson 74. Lesson 12 for Home Reading

Lesson 75. *Optional*

SEASONS

Lesson 76 87

Lesson 77 92

THE ENGLISH YEAR

Lesson 78 96

Lesson 79 101

Lesson 80. *Optional*

Lesson 81 106

Lesson 82 112

Lesson 83 117

Lesson 84. *Optional*

Lesson 85. Listening Comprehension Lesson

Lesson 86. Review 5 122

Lesson 87. Lesson 13 for Home Reading

Lesson 88. Lesson 14 for Home Reading

NATURE

Lesson 89 126

Lesson 90 129

Lesson 91 133

Lesson 92. *Optional*

Lesson 93. Listening Comprehension Lesson

Lesson 94. Review 6 138

Lesson 95. Lesson 15 for Home Reading

Lesson 96. Lesson 16 for Home Reading

Lesson 97. *Optional*

Lesson 98. Listening Comprehension Lesson

Lesson 99. *Optional*

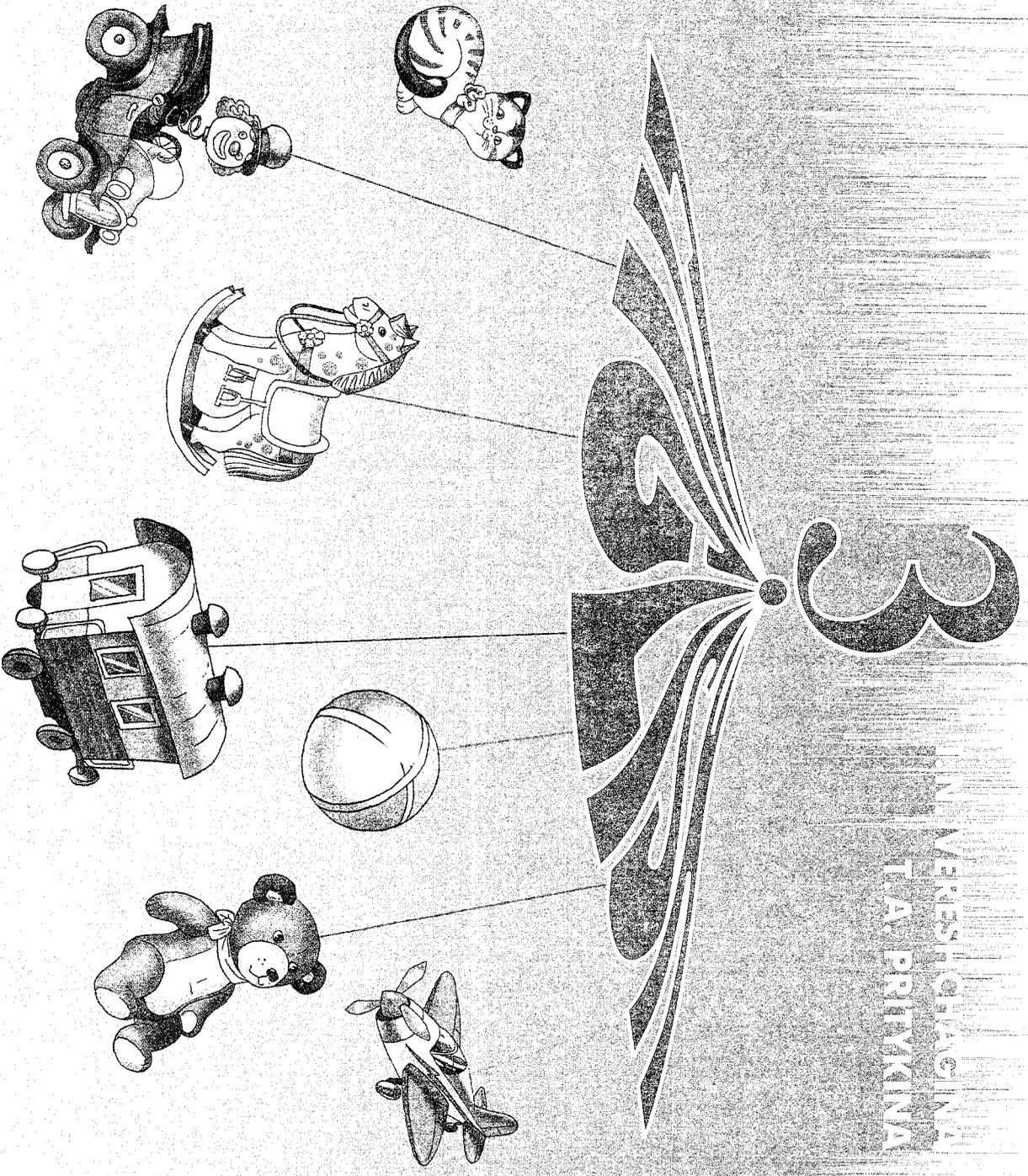
Puzzle Time: Keys 142

Reference Grammar 144

English-Russian Vocabulary 155

Irregular Verbs 172

И. И. ВЕРЕСЬКО
И. А. ПРИТКИНА



Student's Book

ENGLISH

PROVESHCHENIYE
PUBLISHERS

PART 2

**И.Н. ВЕРЕЩАГИНА
Т.А. ГРИЫКИНА**

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

3
класс

УЧЕБНИК

**для общеобразовательных
учреждений и школ
с углублённым изучением
английского языка**

В ДВУХ ЧАСТЯХ

Часть 2

Рекомендовано
Министерством образования и науки
Российской Федерации

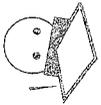
9-е издание

#

Москва «ПРОСВЕЩЕНИЕ» 2010

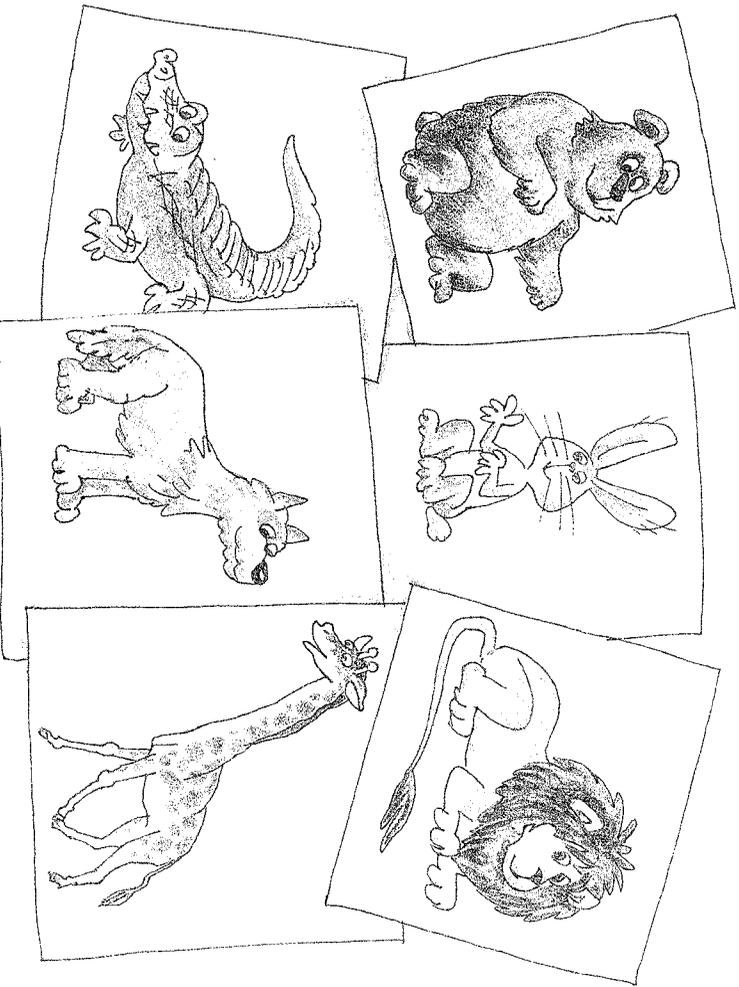
45 The Forty-fifth Lesson

Lesson Forty-five



Let Us Learn _____

- 1 Play a "Memory Game". Look at the pictures for a minute, then close the book, name all the animals you saw and say:
 - which animal is the first (second, ...);
 - which animal has got a long (short) tail;
 - which animal has got a long (short) neck.



- 2 Put the sentences in the correct order to make the conversation and role-play it.
 - Have you got a pet?
 - What does your father teach Rover to do?
 - His name is Rover.
 - What is it?

- We all do. Mum feeds! him. I take him for a walk and Dad teaches him.
- What's his name?
- Dad teaches him to run after a ball and bring it back to him.
- Who looks after Rover?
- What a clever pet you've got! What colour is your dog?
- Yes, I have.
- He's black. He has got a long neck and a short tail.
- Oh, how I'd love to have a pet, too!
- It's a dog.

3 Play a "Number Game". Pretend one of you is Rita and the other is Mary.

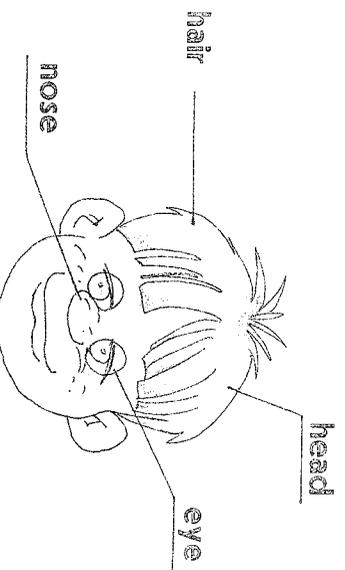
Example

Rita: How much is eight and eleven?

Mary: Eight and eleven is nineteen.

4 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  43.

5 Look at the picture. Read and learn the new words.



6 Find the rhyming twins.

buy	nose
these	eye
bear	hair
head	please
rose	red

1 feed [fi:d] — кормить



Let Us Read and Learn

- 7 Listen to the game song “Alouette”,  44. Read and learn three parts of it.

I. Alouette, little Alouette,

Alouette, play the game with me.

Put your finger¹ on your head,

Put your finger on your head,

On your head, on your head,

Don't forget, ² Alouette, oh!

II. Alouette, little Alouette,

Alouette, play the game with me.

Put your finger on your eye,

Put your finger on your eye,

On your eye, on your eye,

On your head, on your head,

Don't forget, Alouette, oh!

III. Alouette, little Alouette,

Alouette, play the game with me.

Put your finger on your nose,

Put your finger on your nose,

On your nose, on your nose,

On your eye, on your eye,

On your head, on your head,

Don't forget, Alouette, oh!

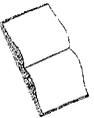
Let Us Read

- 8 Read the first part of the story “At the Zoo” and say why the zookeeper³ didn't let Ted give a banana to the monkeys.

¹ finger [ˈfɪŋgə] — палец

² don't forget [ˈdɒnt fəˈɡet] — не забывай

³ zookeeper [ˌzuːˈki:pə] — one who looks after animals in a zoo



Last week Mr Smith and his son Ted went to the Zoo. They saw a lot of animals there: tigers and lions, elephants and monkeys, giraffes and crocodiles, wolves and foxes, white bears and brown bears, horses and hares. They saw a lot of different birds, too.

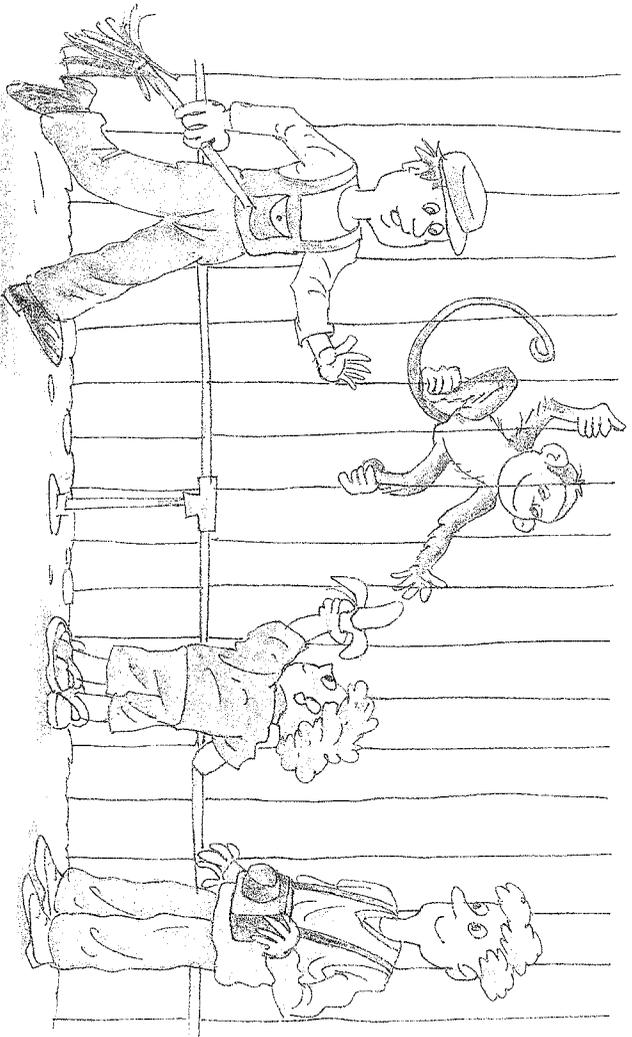
Ted watched the monkeys. They were so funny. They jumped, ran, played and made funny faces.

Ted wanted to give a banana to the monkeys but the zookeeper said:

“Don’t do it, please! They are not hungry or thirsty now. I look after them and I know when and what to give them to eat and to drink.”

“Oh, I’m sorry,” said Ted. “I’m never going to do it again.”

Then the zookeeper invited Ted and his father to have a look at a tiger cub.¹



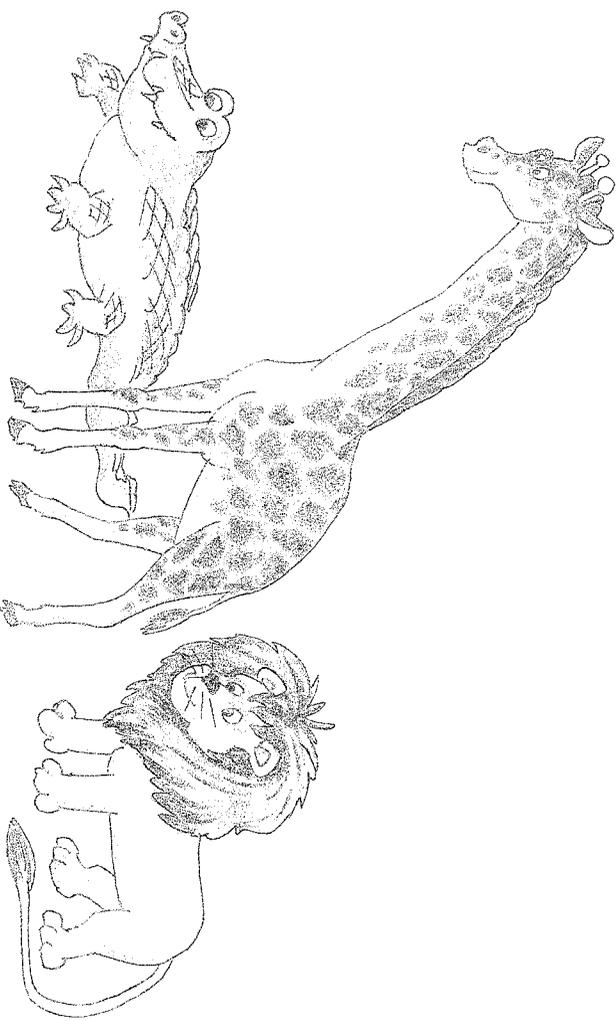
9 Find and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the picture.

¹ cub [kʌb] — the animal’s child



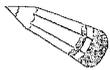
Let Us Talk _____

- 10 Look at the picture and describe the animals.



- 11 Now you think of any funny mixed-up animal. Describe it and let your classmates guess what animal it is.

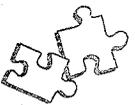
Let Us Write _____



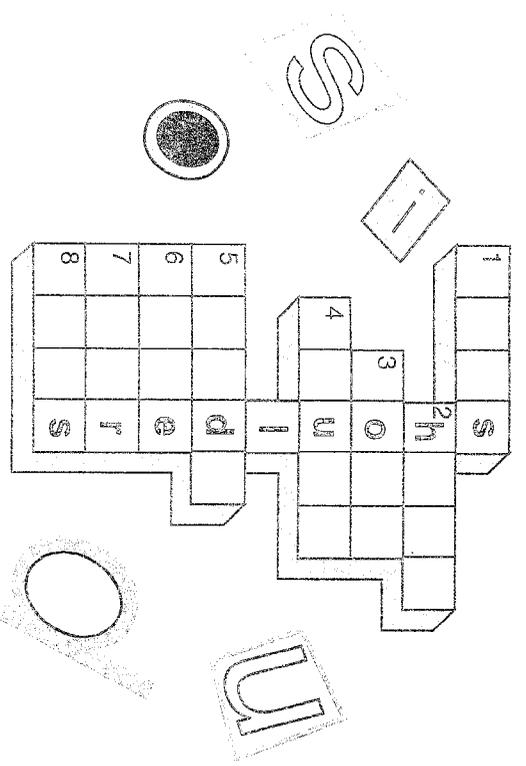
- 12 Draw the face of a funny fellow and write what is what (see Exercise 5).
- 13 Learn to write these words.

head, hair, eye, nose

Puzzle Time _____



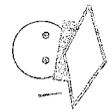
- 14 Complete the crossword.



46 The Forty-sixth LESSON

47 LESSON Forty-six

Let Us Learn _____



1 What are you (is your friend) good at? Say what you (your friend) can do well (can't do well).

Examples *My friend can play chess well.*
I can't play chess well.



⊕
 I
 He
 She
 We
 You
 They

read every day.

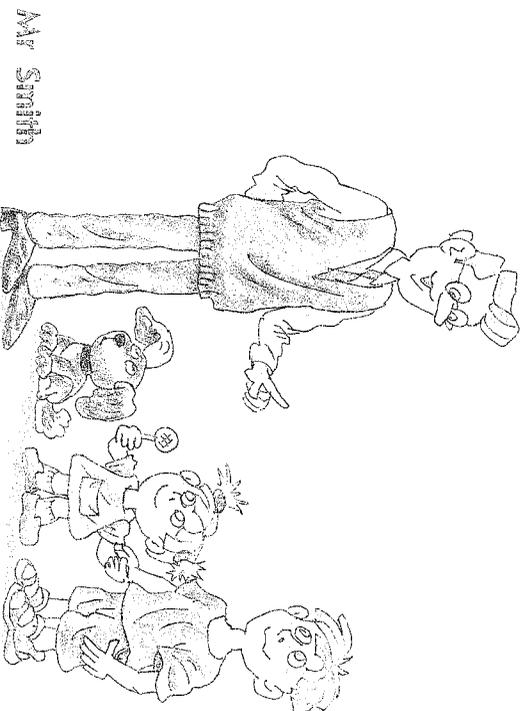
⊙
 I
 he
 she
 we
 you
 they

write every day?

I
He
She
We
You
They

mustn't (mustn't) eat too much ice cream.

2 Mr Smith tells his children what they *must* do and what they *mustn't* do. What does he say? Pretend you are Mr Smith and say it for him.



Mr Smith

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------|---------|
| get up too late. | you | must |
| eat a lot of sweets. | you | mustn't |
| help your mother about the house. | Mary, | |
| come to school in time. | Bob | |
| be late for school. | | |
| look after your little sister. | | |
| get up. | | |
| eat too much ice cream. | | |
| give sweets to your pet. | | |
| take your pet for a walk. | | |
| wash your hands before you eat. | | |

- 3 Parents and teachers often tell children what they must do first.
What do they say?

Example

Mother: do homework/go for a walk.

Mother: You must do your homework before you go for a walk.

Mother: wash hands/eat.

Granny: wash hands and face/go to bed.

Teacher: think/speak.

Grandfather: say goodnight/go to bed.

Father: do homework/play.

Teacher: think/write.

- 4 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  45.

- 5 Try and read the new words.

pet — leg

neck — left

right — right

- 6 Choose and read the words: a) that go with the sound [e]; b) that don't go with the sound [a].

1) mouth, ear, leg, hair, head, eye, must, pet, wolves, clever,
teach, tail, neck, short, left, present, grow, send

2) right, nose, lion, teach, long, look after, only, invite, write,
wrote, nine, visit, party, holiday, open

Let Us Read and Learn



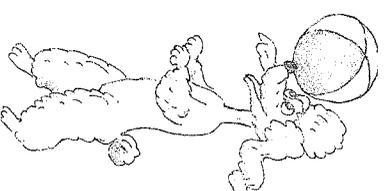
- 7 Listen, read and learn,  46.

I've got a dog,

His name is Jack.

His head is white,

His nose is black.



I take him out
Every day.
Such! fun we have!
We run and play.
Such clever tricks
My dog can do.
I love my dog!
He loves me too!

- 8 Listen to the song "I Found² a Cow",  47. Read and learn it.

I found a cow!
How?
I found a bear!
Where?
I found a hen!
When?
I found a bear!
I found a hen!
I found a cow!
Wow!

Let Us Read _____



- 9 Read the second part of the story "At the Zoo" and say how the zookeeper takes care of the tiger cub.

II

Ted: Oh, what a nice little tiger!
Zookeeper: It's a tiger cub. It's time to give him his milk.
Ted: Hasn't the tiger cub got a mother?

¹ such [sʌʃ] — такой

² found [faʊnd] — нашёл

Zookeeper: He's got a mother. But his mother hasn't got any milk.

Ted: So now you're the cub's mother.

Zookeeper: Well, I am! I look after him. I give him milk six to eight times a day — he is very little.

Ted: And how do you feed him?

Zookeeper: I warm¹ some cow's milk and give it to him in a bottle.²

Ted: Does he like it?

Zookeeper: Yes, he does. He always wants more. Look at him now.

Ted: He's beautiful,³ isn't he? What a nice pet!

Zookeeper: A pet! He isn't a pet. He must go back to his mother and live at the Zoo with the other tigers.

Ted: Have you got any other baby ['beɪbɪ] animals at the Zoo?

Zookeeper: Yes, we've got lots. And they all take a lot of my time.

Father: Oh, excuse us, please. We've taken⁴ a lot of your time too. Thank you very much.

Ted: Yes, thank you very, very much. Goodbye!

Zookeeper: Goodbye. Come and see the animals some other day.



¹ warm [wɔ:m] — подогревать

² bottle ['bɒl] — бутылочка

³ beautiful ['bjʊ:tɪfʊl] — красивый

⁴ We've taken ['wɪv 'teɪkɪ] — Мы заняли

10 Read the joke.

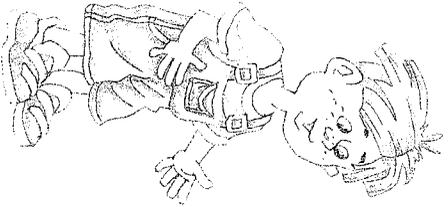
Teacher: What animal has got four legs?

Pupil: Two hens.

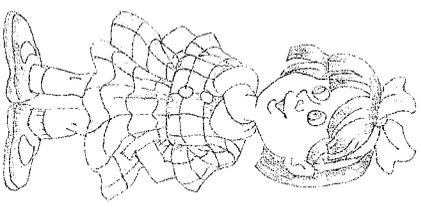


Let Us Talk _____

11 Betty was at the Zoo last week. Alf wants to know about her visit there and asks her these questions. Pretend one of you is Alf, the other is Betty. Answer Alf's questions for Betty and role-play the dialogue.



Alf



Betty

- When did you go to the Zoo?
- Who did you go to the Zoo with?
- What animals did you see there?
- Which animals did you watch?
- Did you feed the animals?
- What did you give them?
- Did you see a zookeeper there?
- Did the zookeeper let you feed the animals?
- Did you see big animals?
- Did you see a baby-elephant?
- What animals are funny to watch? And why?
- What animals can swim?
- What animals do you think are clever?
- What animals have got long tails? Short necks?
- You had a good time at the Zoo, didn't you?
- When did you come home?
- Would you like to go to the Zoo again?

Let Us Write _____

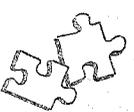


12 Make up and write not less than 6 sentences (see Exercise 2).

13 Learn to write these words.

must, left, right, leg

Puzzle Time



14 How many words that begin with the letter C do you remember? Write them down. Who is the champion?

47, The Forty-seventh Forty-seven



48, The Forty-eighth Forty-eight

49, The Forty-ninth Forty-nine

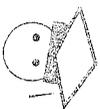
Text "The Story of the Three Goats", part 1

50, The Fiftieth Fifty

51 | The Fifty-first LESSON

Fifty-one

Let Us Learn

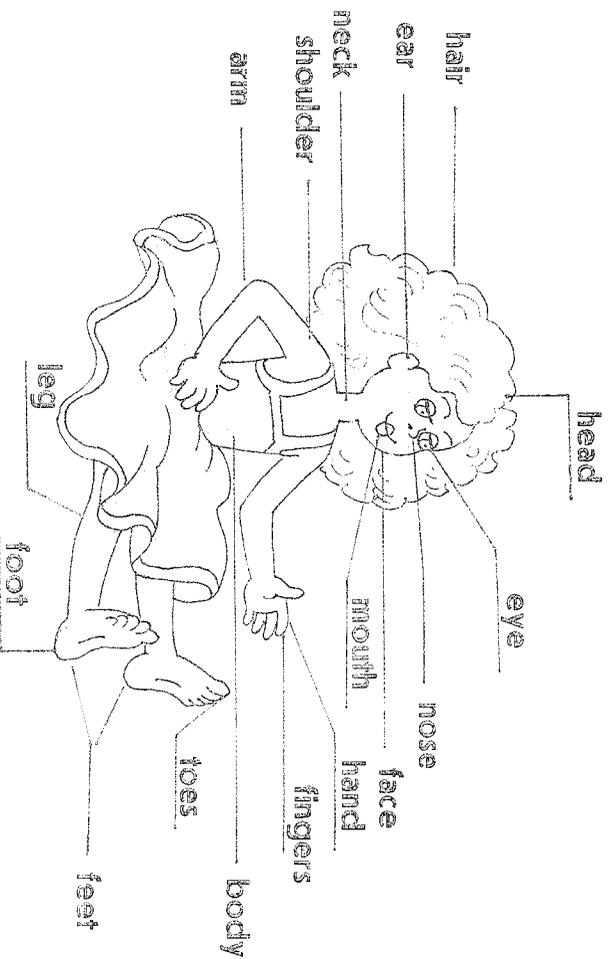


1 Say what you *must* (*mustn't*) do. You may use the following:
help your mother about the house; go shopping; get up too late;
look after your pet; eat too much ice cream; come to school on
time; be late for school; take your dog for a walk; feed your pet;
watch TV too late; do exercises every day; wash your hands
before you eat; go to bed too late ...

2 Make sure that you remember how to say numbers in words.
55, 32, 48, 69, 66, 100, 95, 81, 17, 74, 20, 25, 11, 14, 13, 12

3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  49.

4 This doll can help you to learn the names of the parts of the body. Read and remember.



5 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[b] not, what, wash, shop, shopping, long, porridge, coffee, body, a long body, a short body — What animal has got a long body? — I think a crocodile has got a long body.

[ɑ:] glass, last, father, party, are, arm, an arm — arms, his arm, her arm, their arms, my left arm, my right arm. I've got two arms: this is my left arm and this is my right arm.

[ɪ] in, his, this, ill, six, skip, live, kitten, swim, bring, different, visit, fish, pity, little, sister, finger, a finger — fingers. I've got ten fingers — five on my right hand and five on my left hand.

[ʊ] put, good, wolf, look, foot, a foot — feet, my right foot, my left foot. I've got two feet: this is my right foot and this is my left foot.

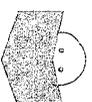
[əʊ] no, so, know, only, grow, open, go, nose, toe, a toe — toes. — How many toes have you got? — I've got ten toes — five on my

left foot and five on my right foot. We've got ten fingers on our hands and ten toes on our feet.

[əʊ] shoulder, a shoulder — shoulders. This is my right shoulder and this is my left shoulder. Oh, look at that man's shoulders! — Do you know the names of all the parts of the body? — Yes, I do.

They are: a head, a face, hair, eyes, a nose, a mouth, ears, a neck, shoulders, arms, hands, fingers, legs, feet, toes.

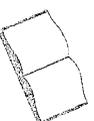
Let Us Read and Learn _____



6 Listen, read and learn,  50.

I mustn't say "I can't".
I mustn't say "I won't". 1
I mustn't say "I'm not".
I mustn't say "I don't".
I must say "I will". 2
I must say "I am".
I must say "I do".
I must say "I can".

Let Us Read _____



7 Read the text and say what's the main idea of it.

Once there lived³ a little Elephant. His name was Gaston. His mother and father worked from morning till⁴ late at night as all the elephants usually did. But Gaston didn't like to work. He liked to play and that was what he did all day long.

- 1 I won't [wɒnt] — не буду
- 2 I will [wɪl] — буду
- 3 once there lived [ɪ'wʌnz ðeə 'lɪvd] — жил-был
- 4 from ... till [frɒm ... tɪl] — от ... до

One morning Gaston's mother said, "My dear, it's time for you to work, too."

As Gaston didn't want to work, he ran away. He had a very good time: he ran, jumped and played games. In the evening he was very hungry. It was his mother who usually gave him food to eat. But there was no mother with him there. Who could help him?



Then Gaston had an idea. He went to the Lion and said: "Mr Lion, I'm so hungry. Would you give me some bananas to eat?" "All right!" said the Lion. "But you must work first. Then you can get your supper."



The little Elephant did want to have his supper, but he didn't want to work! So he ran away.

Then he saw the Tiger. He asked the Tiger to give him some apples to eat. "OK," said the Tiger, "but you must work first." And Gaston ran away.

He asked a lot of animals to give him something to eat. But they all asked him to work first.



So the hungry Elephant ran back home to his parents.

When he saw his mother, he said, "Dear Mum! I'm so sorry!.. Now I know that if I want to have something to eat I must work."



#

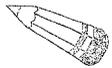
8 Choose and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the pictures.



Let Us Talk _____

- 9 What is your idea about doing right and wrong things? Say what you *must* and *mustn't* do.

Let Us Write _____



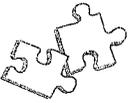
- 10 They are the right things to do, aren't they? So agree with the statements.

Examples

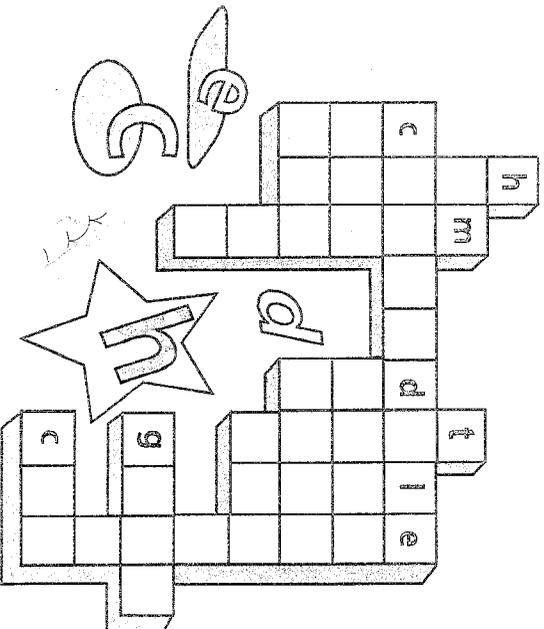
- *We must eat three or four times a day.*
- *Yes, we must eat three or four times a day.*
- *Children mustn't put their toys in the wrong places.*
- *No, children mustn't put their toys in the wrong places.*

1. We must eat the right food. 2. Boys and girls must go for a walk every day. 3. Pupils mustn't be late for school. 4. You mustn't watch TV every day. 5. We must help our parents. 6. You mustn't go to bed too late.

Puzzle Time _____



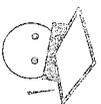
- 11 To solve the puzzle you must write the names of ten animals.



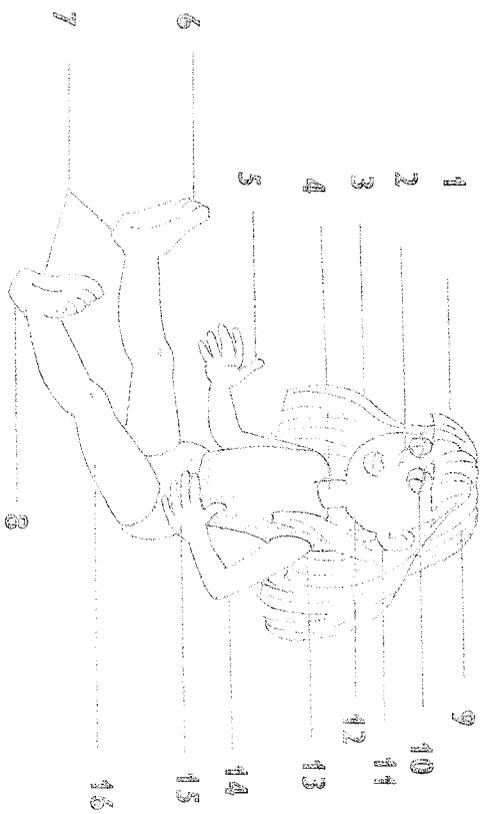
52 The Fifty-second LESSON

LESSON Fifty-two

Let Us Learn



1 Do you remember the names of the parts of the body? Name them, please.



2 Pretend you've got a little sister (brother). You ask her (him) these questions. Let her (him) answer them. Role-play the dialogue.

Example — *What do you hear¹ with?*
— *I hear with my ears.*

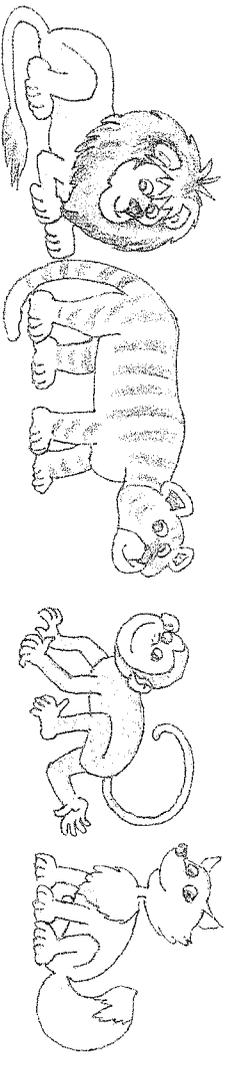
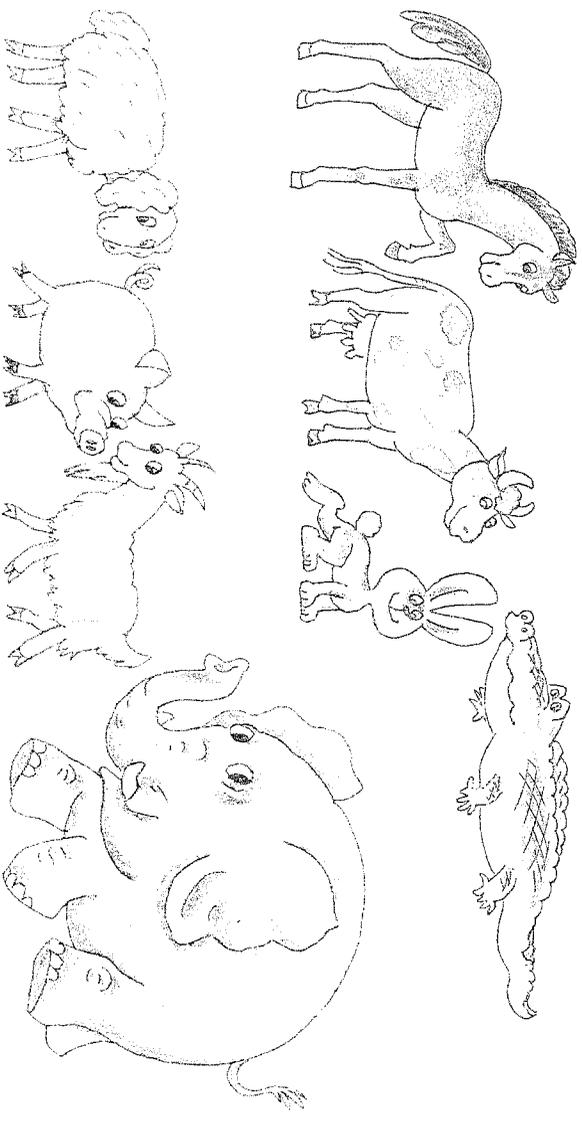
- What do you see with?
- What do you eat with?
- What do you walk with?
- What do you write with?
- What do you think with?

3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  51.

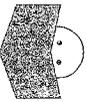
¹ hear [hɪə] — слышать

4 Look at the pictures and name domestic and wild animals.

Example A cow is a ... animal.



Let Us Read and Learn _____



5 Listen, read and learn,  52.

We smell with our nose,
We see with our eyes,
We eat with our mouth
Tasty puddings and pies.²

¹ smell [smel] — нюхать

² pie [paɪ] — пирог

With legs and feet we walk,
With lips¹ and tongue² we talk,
And with our ears
We can hear.

6 Listen to the action song "Head and Shoulders",  53. Read and learn to sing it.

Head and shoulders,
Knees³ and toes,
Knees and toes.
Head and shoulders,
Knees and toes,
Knees and toes.

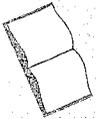
And eyes and ears,
And mouth and nose.
Head and shoulders,
Knees and toes,
Knees and toes.

Arms and legs,
And feet and hands,
Feet and hands.
Arms and legs,
And feet and hands.
Feet and hands.

And eyes and ears,
And mouth and nose.
Head and shoulders
Knees and toes,
Knees and toes.

4

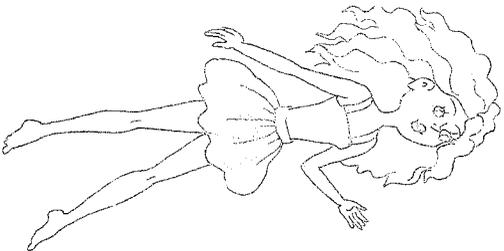
1 lip [lip] — губа
2 tongue [tʌŋ] — язык
3 knee [ni:] — колено



Let Us Read

7 Use the right word for each gap and read the text.

This is my doll. Her name is Polly. She's a big She's got big blue ..., little ears, a short ... and a little red Her ... is long and yellow.



She's got two arms: this is her right ... and this is her ... arm. She's got ten ...: five on her right hand and five on her Her fingers are She's got long legs, little ... and ... little toes: five on her ... foot and ... on her

My doll is very She can do many things: with her ... she can eat tasty things; with her ... and feet she walks; with her tongue and lips she And with her ... she can hear me. I say: "Polly, dear!" and my doll says: "Ma-ma."

I think my doll is very nice and I love my doll.

8 Read the text and say why the woman ran away.

Yesterday Rover came to the Zoo to visit his friends. Suddenly! he saw a new animal. It was yellow, brown and black. It had a little head, long legs, a long tail and a very, very long neck!

Rover came up to the animal and said:

"Hello, ... Excuse me, I don't know your name."

"That's all right. My name is Blaze."

"Who are you? I didn't see you here last month."

"I'm a giraffe. I lived in Africa. But now I live here, at the Zoo. I like it here. Children and their parents often come to see me. They always bring me a lot of things to eat: fruit and vegetables, sweets and cookies and many other tasty things."

"Do you eat birds or animals?"

I suddenly [sʌdnli] — bɪpɪr

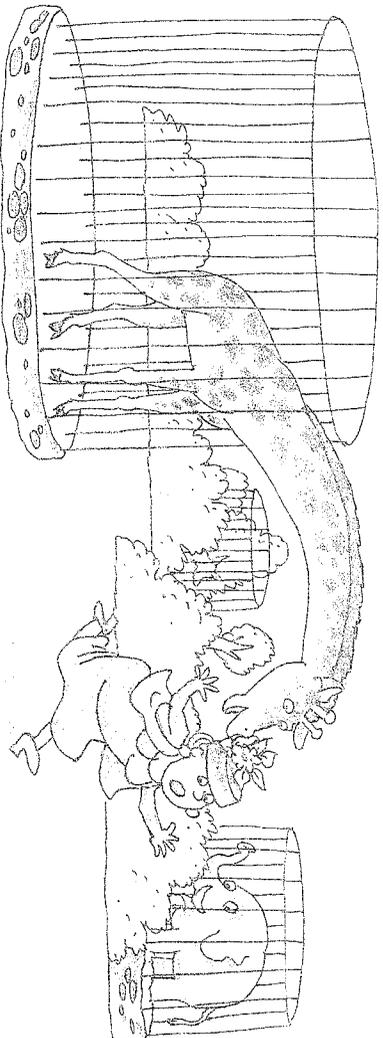
“Oh, no, I don't. Why are you looking at my neck? You don't like it, do you?”

“Well, I do! But why is it so long?”

“Because! I eat leaves from the trees. My long neck helps me do it.”

“Oh, I see.”

“I like to eat grass, too. You know, one day a woman came to look at me. I saw nice green grass on her hat. I thought she wanted to give it to me to eat.”



“Of course I thanked her and ate some grass. I didn't like it! It wasn't tasty at all! And do you know what the woman did? She ran away! I don't know why! Can you tell me why she ran away?”

9 Arrange the sentences in a logical order according to the text.

The giraffe didn't like the grass on the woman's hat.
Rover came to the Zoo to visit his friends.

One day a woman came to the Zoo.

He saw a new animal.

The giraffe liked living at the Zoo.

The woman ran away.

The giraffe's neck helps him get food.

1 because [bi'kɔz] — потому что

2 hat [hæt] — шляпа



Let Us Talk _____

- 10 Now give a short summary of the tale. Try to make it as short as you can: the shorter – the better. Who is the champion?
- 11 Make a doll and describe it (Exercise 7 can help you).



Let Us Write _____

- 12 Make sure you know how to write the names of the parts of the body. Copy and fill in the chart (Exercise 1 can help you).

HEAD

.....

BODY

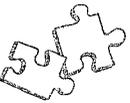
.....

- 13 Do Exercise 11 in written form.

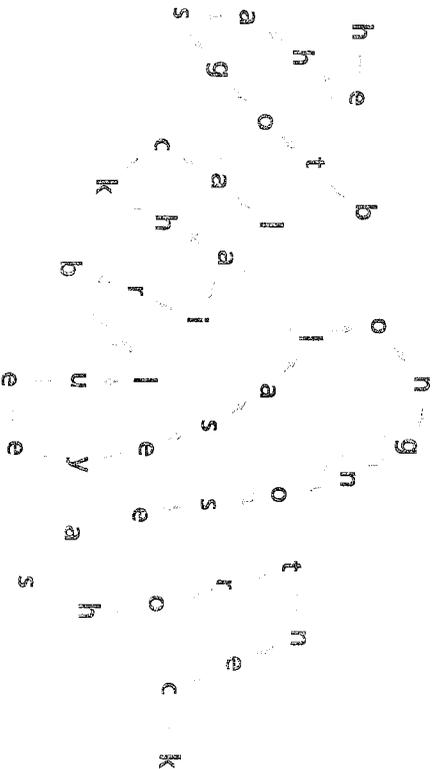
- 14 Learn to write these words.

body, foot (feet), arm, finger, toe, shoulder

Puzzle Time _____



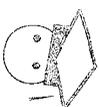
- 15 Read the secret message.



53 The Fifty-third LESSON

53, LESSON Fifty-three

Let Us Learn _____



long — long	— (the) long	clever — clever	— (the) clever
short — short	— (the) short	big — big	— (the) big
old — old	— (the) old	funny — funny	— (the) funny
new — new	— (the) new	tasty — tasty	— (the) tasty

(see part 2, p. 146–147)

1 Agree or disagree.

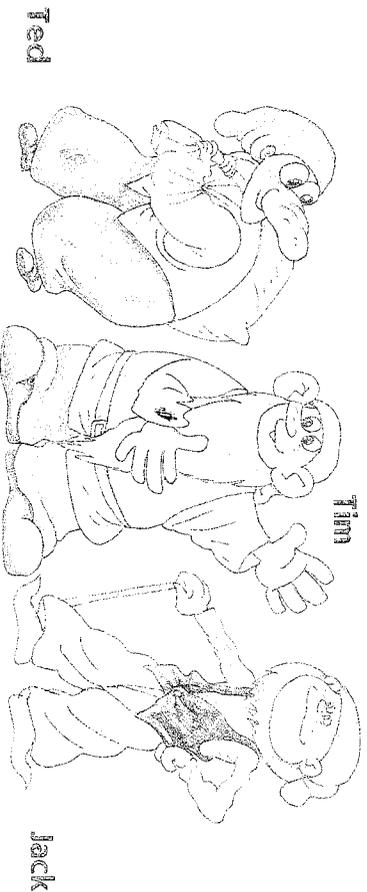
- The elephant is the biggest animal.
- The biggest cat is the tiger.
- The giraffe's neck is shorter than the bear's.
- The monkey's tail is longer than the cat's.
- Dogs are cleverer than cats.
- Bananas are tastier than apples.
- The giraffe has got the longest neck.
- Cats are funnier than monkeys.

2 Compare these funny fellows.

Examples

Jack's ears are bigger than Ted's.

Tim's ears are the biggest.



Ted

Tim

Jack

3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  54.

4 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

green — sheep

[aɪ] wife, write, right, child — wild, a wild animal — wild animals.
What wild animals do you know? — Is the monkey a wild animal? — Yes, the monkey is a wild animal.

[e] leg, left, neck, America, domestic, a domestic animal — domestic animals. — What domestic animals do you know? — I know that the cow and the horse are domestic animals. The pig and the sheep are domestic animals, too.

[eɪ] made, tasty, stadium, favourite, my favourite book, my favourite sport. — What is your favourite English book? — My favourite English book is “Pinocchio”. The dog is the favourite pet with the English.

[æ] hand, drank, Africa, animal, hamster, a hamster — hamsters.
— Can a hamster be a pet? — Yes, many boys and girls keep hamsters as pets at home.

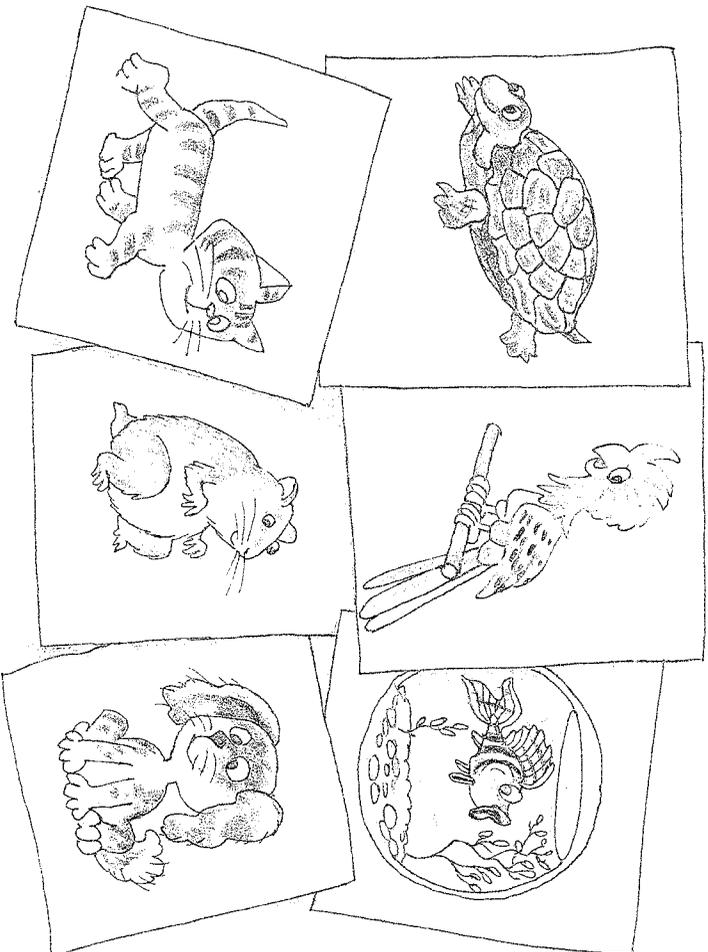
parrot, a parrot — parrots, a nice parrot, a clever parrot, a blue and green parrot. A lot of families keep parrots as pets at home.
— Have you got a parrot? — Yes. — Can your parrot talk?
— Yes, my parrot can talk.

[ɔ:] four, walk, always, daughter, for, tortoise, a tortoise — tortoises, a big tortoise, a little tortoise. — Who keeps a tortoise as a pet at home? — I do. — What does your tortoise eat? — My tortoise eats grass, leaves, fruit and vegetables.

[ju:] you, new, pupil, beautiful, a beautiful woman, a beautiful child, a beautiful girl. I think my cat is beautiful. My aunt has got beautiful eyes.

5 Look at the pictures (p. 29) and say what animal you'd like to keep as a pet.

Example I'd like to keep a cat as a pet.



Let Us Read and Learn



6 Listen to the song "Fingers",  55. Read and learn it.

How many fingers have I got?

Five on my right hand.

Five on my left hand.

How many fingers have I got?

7 Here are two poems. Listen to them,  56. Read them, choose the one you like best of all and learn it by heart.

Without your tongue

You cannot talk.

Without your feet

You cannot walk.

Without your eyes
You cannot see.
Without your heart!
You cannot be.

I've got two legs
With which I walk.
I've got a tongue
With which I talk.
I've got two eyes
With which I see.
I've got one heart
To live and be.

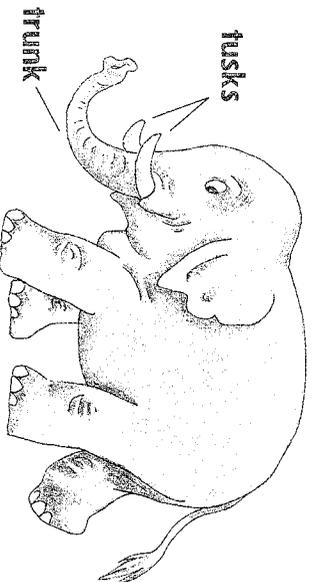
Let Us Read _____



8 Read and say if you've got new information about elephants.

Elephants are the biggest four-legged animals. They are grey and sometimes white. They haven't got hair. Elephants come from Africa and Asia.²

African elephants have got very big ears and Asia elephants have got little ears.



Elephants have got a very long nose — a trunk [trʌŋk] and two long white teeth — tusks [tʌks].

Elephants eat a lot of food and drink a lot of water. They eat leaves, grass, and fruit.

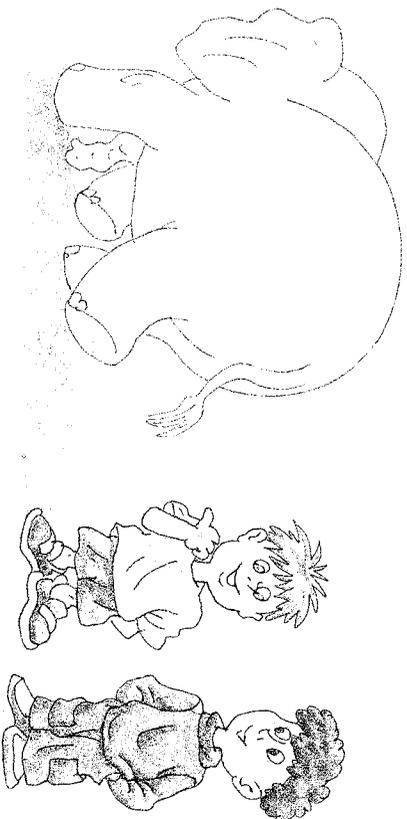
¹ heart [hɑ:t] — сердце

² Asia ['eɪʃə] — Азия

Elephants can swim — they are very good swimmers. Elephants love water.

When the elephant sleeps, it usually stands. And as you know elephants help man work.

9 Read the joke.



Bob: Dick, this elephant's got five legs!

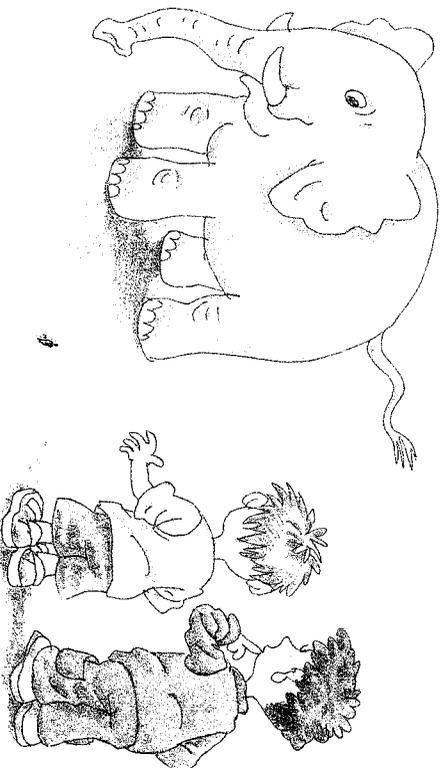
Dick: Which elephant?!

Bob: The big one!

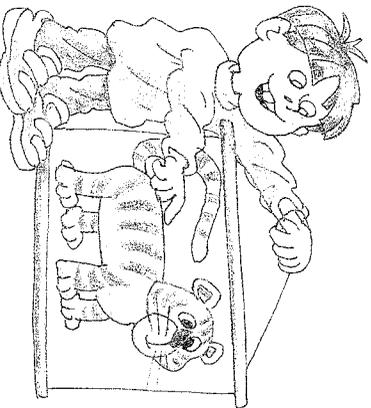
Dick: No, it hasn't. It's got four legs.

Bob: Look! One ... two ... three ... four ... five!

Dick: That isn't a leg! It's a trunk!



- 10 Billy Kay loves animals and knows a lot about them. This is what he wrote about tigers.



My favourite animals are tigers. They are orange, black and white. Tigers have got big bodies, long tails and big teeth. Baby-tigers stay¹ with their mothers for two years. Tigers live alone.² They eat meat and fish. They hunt³ different animals. They usually hunt in the long grass. Tigers can swim. They live in Asia. They have got their own territory to live in. I think tigers are beautiful animals.
Billy Kay

Let Us Talk

- 11 Now you know what Billy's favourite animal is. And what is yours?
- 12 What pet would you like to keep at home and why?
- 13 Draw the picture of a funny fellow and describe it.

Let Us Write

- 14 What can you write about your favourite animal? (See Exercise 10.)
- 15 Last week Bill was in the Zoo. What questions would you ask him? The words in brackets can help you.
- Bill went to the Zoo last week. (*When?*)
He went there with his father and sister. (*With whom?*)

¹ stay [steɪ] — оставаться

² alone [ə'ləʊn] — в одиночку

³ hunt [hʌnt] — охотиться

They saw a giraffe there. (*Whom?*)
 Bill gave the giraffe a banana. (*What?*)
 The giraffe liked the banana very much. (*Did?*)
 They watched the giraffe for a long time. (*Why?*)

16 Write according to the model.

Example 24 — the twenty-fourth

13, 15, 18, 20, 25, 31, 42, 53

17 Learn to write these words.

*wild, domestic, sheep (sheep), favourite, hamster,
 beautiful, parrot*

Puzzle Time _____



18 What's the message? This is the key to the code.¹

1 —	a	8 —	h	15 —	o	22 —	v
2 —	b	9 —	i	16 —	p	23 —	w
3 —	c	10 —	j	17 —	q	24 —	x
4 —	d	11 —	k	18 —	r	25 —	y
5 —	e	12 —	l	19 —	s	26 —	z
6 —	f	13 —	m	20 —	t		
7 —	g	14 —	n	21 —	u		

1325 61221521189205 114913112 919 1 1291514

¹ the key [ki:] to the code [kɔ:d] — ключ к коду

54 The Fifty-four Lesson

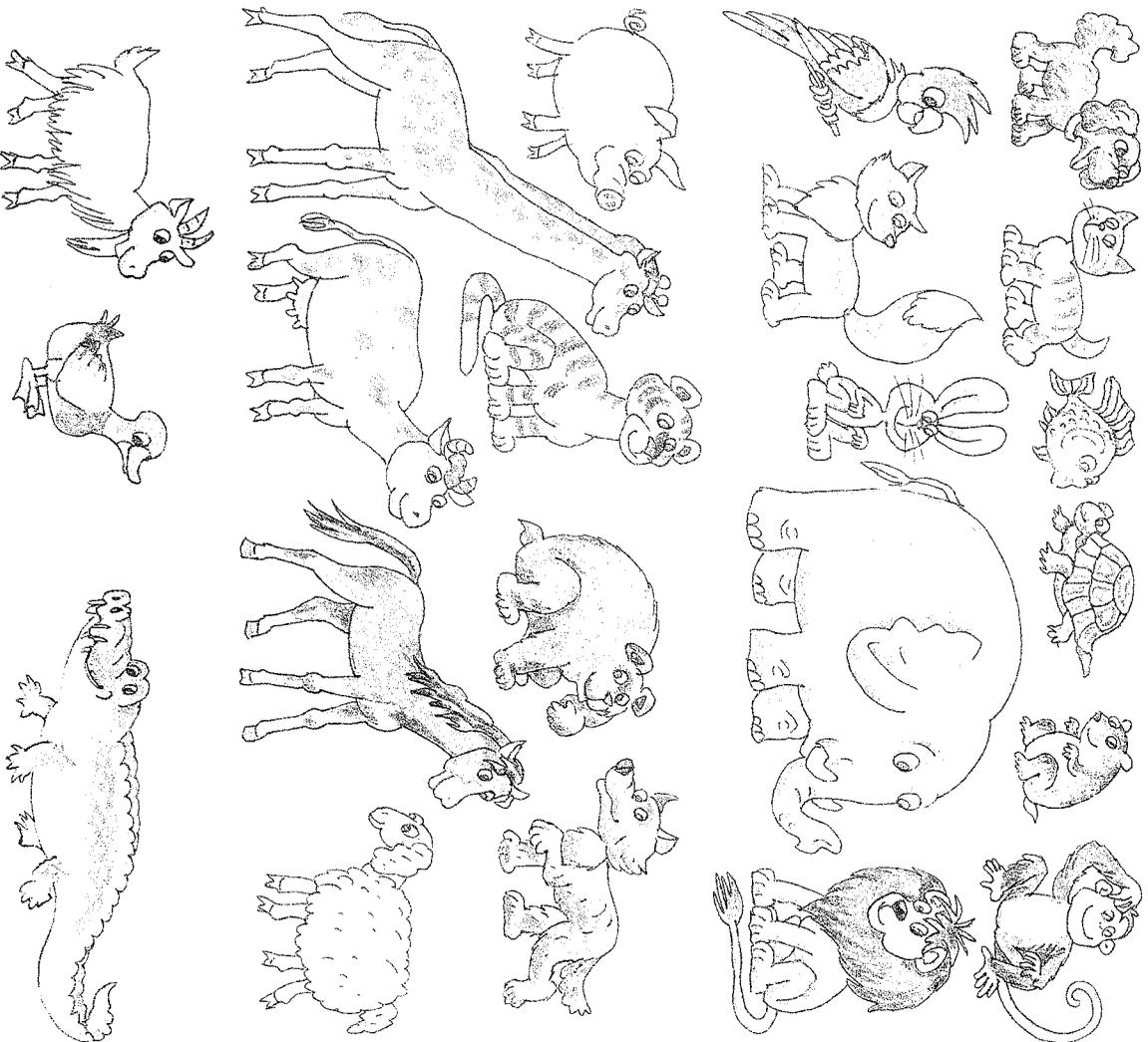
Lesson Fifty-four

Review 3



Let Us Talk

1 Play a "Memory Game". Look at the pictures for a minute, then close it and quickly name all the animals.



2 Compare the animals (the pictures in Exercise 1 can help you).

Examples

The elephant is bigger than the tiger.

The monkey's tail is longer than the hare's.

3 Look at the picture again (Exercise 1). Find and name the animals that:

- can swim; — eat grass;
- can jump; — eat meat.
- don't eat meat;

4 Now name the animals according to the diagram. Say what you can about one of them.

Animals

wild animals

domestic animals

house pets farm animals

big little long-legged short-legged

long-necked short-necked long-tailed short-tailed

eat

bread grass meat leaves fruit vegetables fish

Examples 1) *I know ... wild animals. They are: ...*

I know ... domestic animals. They are: ...

... are long-legged wild animals. They eat: ...

2) *The horse is a domestic animal. It's a farm animal.*

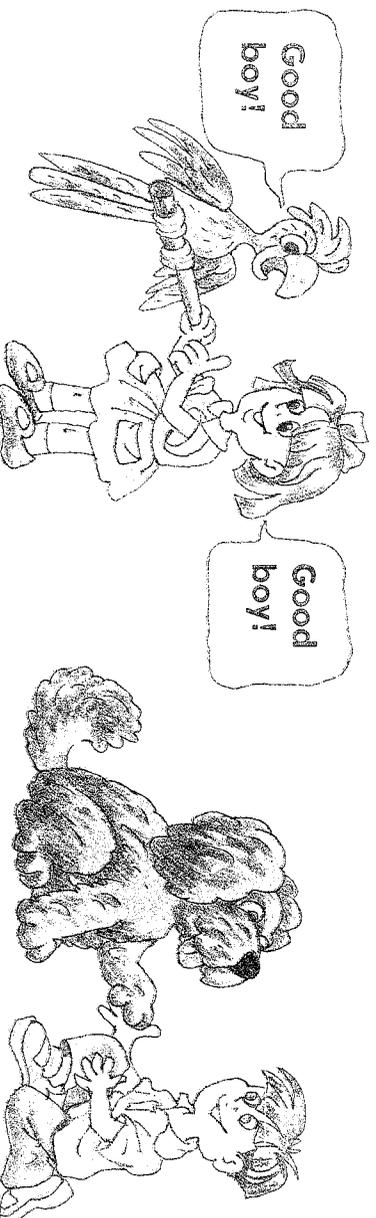
It's big. It's brown, grey and white. The horse has got four long legs, a long neck and a long tail. It eats grass.

5 Play a guessing game. Think of an animal. Let your classmates guess what animal it is by asking you different questions.

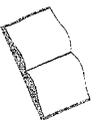
- Is it a wild or a domestic animal?
- Is it big or little?
- What colour is it?

- How many legs has it got?
- Is its neck (body, tail) long or short?
- Has it got hair?
- Is it a long-haired or a short-haired animal?
- Are its ears (eyes) big or little?
- Has it got sharp teeth?
- Can it swim (run, jump)?
- Does it eat grass (leaves, meat, fish, bread, vegetables, fruit)?
- Does it live in the house (on a farm)? ...

- 6 Describe an animal so that your classmates could guess what animal it is.
- 7 Let us see if you know everything about your pet. Your classmates can ask you all kinds of questions! Do answer them!
- 8 If you've got a pet at home, say how you must take care of it: what you *must* (*mustn't*) do.
- 9 Now it's your turn to make up a story of your own to any picture you like.



Let Us Read _____



- 10 Find and read aloud:
 - the names of the parts of the body;
 - the words you need to describe an animal;
 - the words you need to compare things.

1 sharp [ʃɑ:p] — острый

2 take care ['teɪk 'keə] = look after

big, pet, teach, wolf, tail, long, look after, neck, must, clever, lion, eye, left, bigger, nose, right, short, head, nicer, wolves, parrot, longer, wild, mouth, beautiful, hair, cleverer, hamster, favourite, sheep, domestic, foot, pig, feet, toe, body, arm, little, older, finger, shoulder, newer, hand, shorter, funnier, bear, tastier

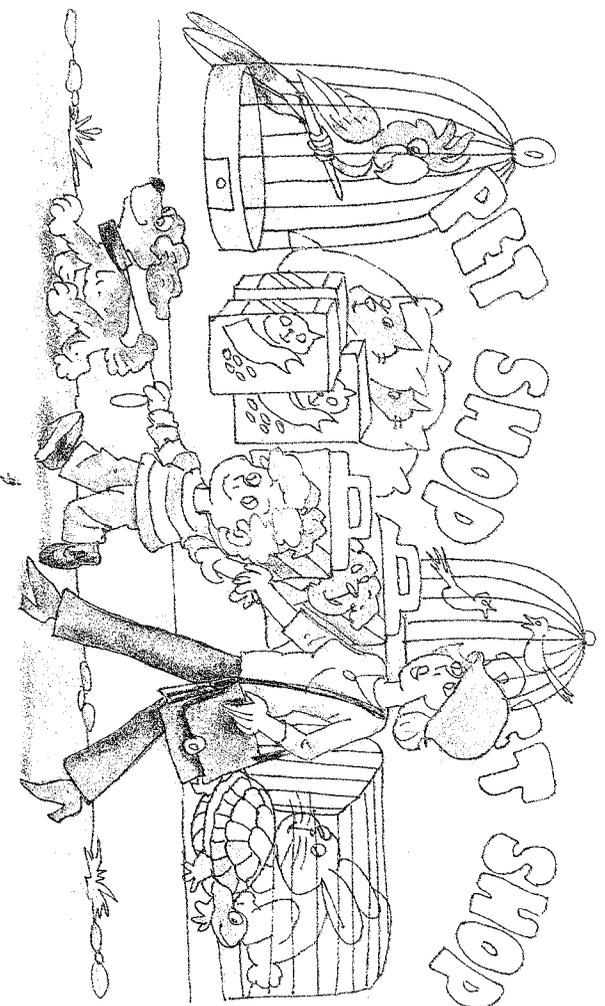
11 Read and prove that the English are pet lovers.

Lots of families in Great Britain have got one or more¹ pets. Dogs are the favourite pets and there are about 6 million of them in Britain. The second favourite is a bird — budgie.²

Some families do not keep cats or dogs. They keep other animals as pets in their homes.

There are more than 12 million pets in Britain.

The English take good care of their pets. They give them nice names: Rover, Rax, Cindy, Misy (for dogs); Albert, Snowy, Fluffy, Tom (for cats); Polly, Chatterbox (for parrots); Guy, Scamper, Shipley,



¹ more [mɔ:] — 60jee

² budgie ['bʌdʒɪ] — əwɪ nɒnjʌs

Shirley (for monkeys). When they speak of their pets, they say, "He", "She" (not "It").

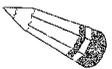
The English give their pets nice food to eat. They buy food for their pets in pet shops. The English are pet lovers!

- 12 Read the text to know more about animals. What do you think is the most interesting information?

1

- ... rabbits can live five years, sheep can live twelve years, cats can live thirteen years, dogs can live fifteen years, goats can live fifteen years, cows can live twenty-five years, pigs can live twenty-five years, horses can live thirty years;
- ... there was a cat who lived thirty-three years;
- ... there was a cat who had thirteen kittens;
- ... cats love their homes. If you get a new home and take your cat with you, it can run away to its old home;
- ... mice can sing;
- ... there are a lot of white animals: white cats, white dogs, white rabbits, white horses, white goats, white bears, white elephants, white tigers, white crocodiles;
- ... white tigers live only in India. They have got blue eyes;
- ... white crocodiles live in South? America.

Let Us Write _____

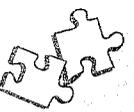


- 13 Compose and write a story of your own (see Exercise 9).

- 14 Write a composition about your pet or about your favourite animal.

¹ it's interesting [ˈɪntrestɪŋ] — интересно
² South [saʊθ] — южный

Puzzle Time



15 Guess the riddles.

I'm big. I'm grey.
My nose is long.
My tail is short.
I'm an ...

I'm little. I'm grey.
My nose is short.
My tail is long.
I'm a ...

55 The Fifty-fifth
Fifty-five

56 The Fifty-sixth
Fifty-six



57 The Fifty-seventh
Fifty-seven

Text "The Story of the Three Goats", part II

58 The Fifty-eighth
Fifty-eight

59 The Fifty-ninth Lesson

Lesson Fifty-nine



Let Us Learn _____

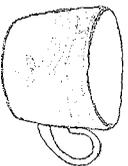
beautiful — (the) most beautiful
interesting — (the) most interesting

(see part 2, p. 147)

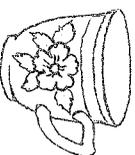
1 Look at the pictures and compare.

Example

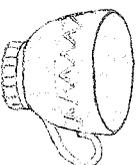
*The first cup is beautiful.
The second cup is more beautiful.
The third cup is the most beautiful of all.*



1



2



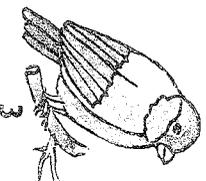
3



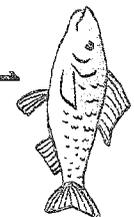
1



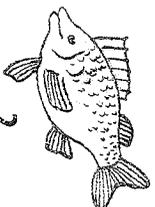
2



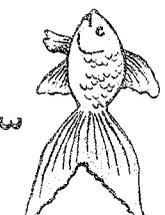
3



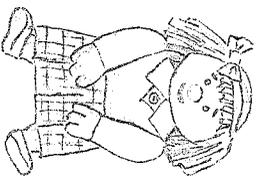
1



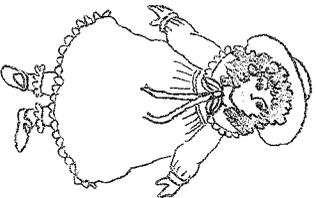
2



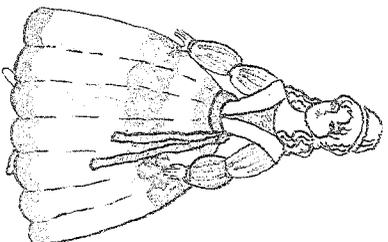
3



1



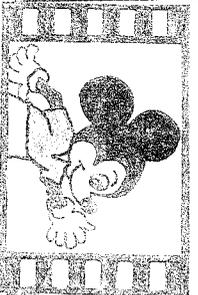
2



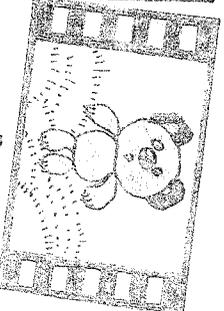
3



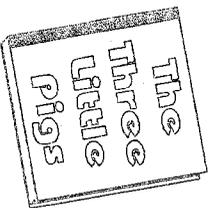
1



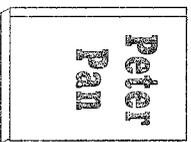
2



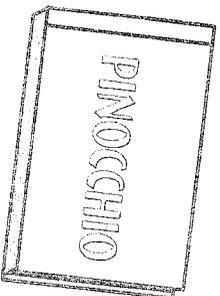
3



1



2



3

2 Choose the right word for each gap.

- tastier newer the longest more beautiful longer
 nicer more interesting older the shortest big long
- The giraffe has got a ... neck.
 - What animal has got the ... tail?
 - I think that bananas are ... than oranges.
 - The elephant has got ... ears.
 - The horse has got a ... tail than the pig.
 - The new doll is ... than the old one.
 - I think that the book "*Pinocchio*" is ... than "*The Three Little Pigs*".

8. There is no place ... than home.
9. My grandpa is ... than my grandma.
10. Kate's toys are ... than Jane's.

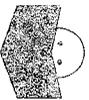
3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  58.

4 This man is a magician. He can do magic. Say what he has got.

Example He has got a ... in his



Let Us Read and Learn _____

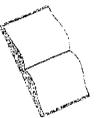


5 Listen, read and learn,  59.

Ted: Mum, where's my toy bear?

Mother: Oh, Ted, you must know where your toys are. You must always keep the right thing in the right place.

Let Us Read _____



6 Read the text and you'll know why rabbits have got short tails.

Once there lived a Rabbit. His name was Bunny. He was grey and big, bigger than his Brother Bonny. But he had no tail. And he wanted to have a long tail, longer than that of Mrs Fox.

One day Bunny went for a walk.
He saw Mrs Fox.

"Hello, Mrs Fox," he said.

"Where are you going?"

"I'm going shopping."

"What are you going to buy?"

"I'm going to buy a tail."

"But you've got a tail! I think it's the longest and the most beautiful tail!"

"Well, but I want a new one, a longer and more beautiful one than my old tail."

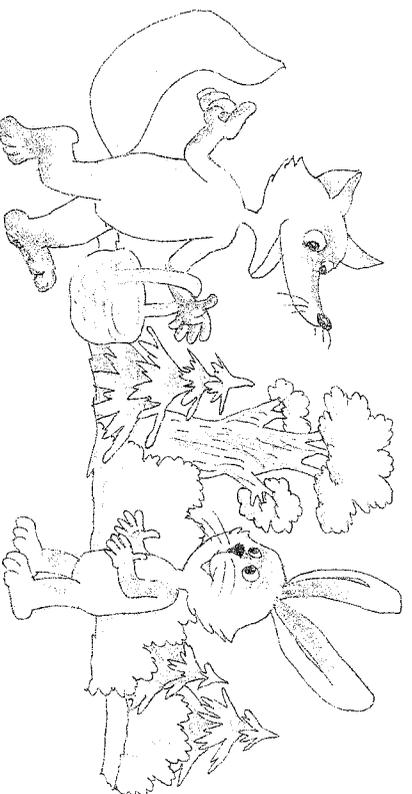
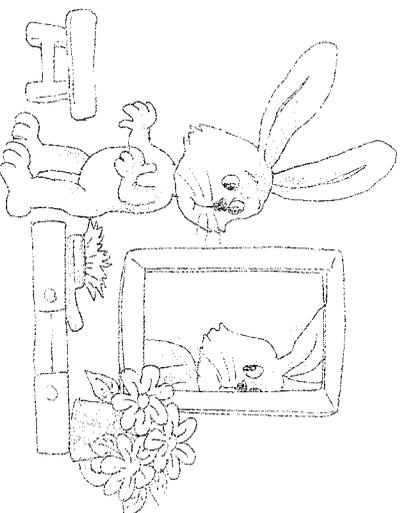
"Oh, please, Mrs Fox, buy a tail for me too. Look at me, I haven't got a tail."

"OK," said the Fox and ran to the shop.

In the shop Mrs Fox bought only one tail. It was a beautiful long red tail, it was longer and more beautiful than her old tail.

She ran back home. On the way¹ home she saw Brother Rabbit. Bunny looked at the Fox's tail and said, "Oh, what a beautiful tail you've got. And where is my tail?"

"I'm sorry," said the Fox, "but there wasn't any tail for you."
Poor little Bunny! He was so sorry. Mrs Fox hadn't bought² a new tail for him!



¹ On the way [ɒn ðə 'weɪ] — По дороге

² hadn't bought [bɔ:t] — не купила

A Dog who was running by came up to Bunny and said: "What's the matter with you?"

"Oh," said Bunny, "all the animals have got long, beautiful tails but I haven't got a tail!"

"Poor little Bunny!" said the Dog.

At that time a Cat was running by.

"Bunny! I've got an idea. I think I know how to help you!" And he ran after the Cat, bit off a little piece of the Cat's tail and gave it to Bunny. Bunny was happy!



"Thank you very much," he said. "Now I've got a tail, too ... It's a very short tail, but it's a tail."

That's why rabbits have got short tails.

- 7 Choose and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the pictures (see Exercise 6).

Let Us Talk _____

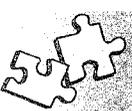
- 8 Think of another end for the tale.

Let Us Write _____

- 9 Choose and write any 5 sentences (see Exercise 2).

1 bit off a little piece [ˈbit ɒf əˈlɪtl̩ ˈpiːs] — откусил маленький кусочек

Puzzle Time _____



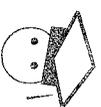
10 How many words can you find in the chainword?



60th Lesson

The Sixtieth Lesson
Sixty

Let Us Learn _____



good -- better -- (the) best
bad -- worse -- (the) worst

(see part 2, p. 147)

1 Compare according to the example.

a) **Example** a long tail -- a longer tail -- the longest tail

a short tail, a funny monkey, a long nose, big ears, a clever dog,
an old man, a long street, big animals, new toys, a nice pet,
short legs, big shops, a long walk, a funny story

b) **Example** a beautiful child — a more beautiful child — the most beautiful child

a beautiful girl, a beautiful woman, interesting books, an interesting tale, beautiful trees, beautiful toys, an interesting story

c) **Example** a good daughter — a better daughter — the best daughter
a good son, a bad boy, good children, bad food, good food,
a good wife

2 Which words do you need to make the sentences complete?

the best cleverer interesting more beautiful nicer
the longest the funniest big older

1. There are a lot of ... shops in London. 2. Peter is ... pupil in the class. 3. Mr Smith is ... than Mr Grey. 4. I think that the monkey is ... animal. 5. The elephant's nose is 6. I think Mary is ... than Sally. 7. I think that the parrot is ... pet. 8. This white puppy is ... than that black one. 9. What an ... story it is!

3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  50.

4 Try and read the new words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

cat — hat, cap, bad — worse [wɜ:ɪs] — (the) worst [wɜ:st]
where — wear — wore [wɜ:]

[ʊ] foot — good — better — (the) best

[u:] food — boot — shoe

a hat — hats, a beautiful hat, my brother's hat, a new hat, an old hat. Mum wants to buy a new hat.

a cap — caps, a brown cap, my brother's cap. — Whose cap is that?
— It's my friend's cap.

wear — wore — What did you wear yesterday, a cap or a hat?
— I wore a cap yesterday. My mother is wearing her new hat.

a shoe — shoes, a right shoe, a left shoe, new shoes, brown shoes, old shoes. Yesterday Mother bought me new shoes. I think my new shoes are very nice.

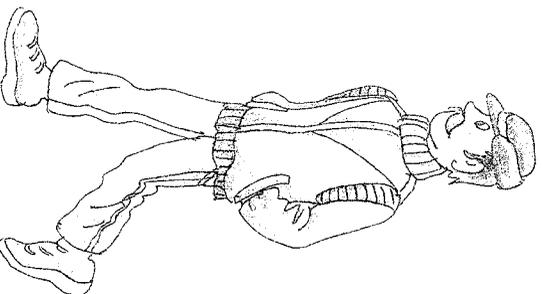
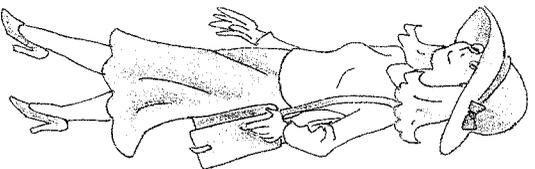
a boot — boots, grey boots, old boots, new boots, big boots. — Do you wear boots or shoes when you go for a walk? — Boots.

good — better — (the) best, a good family, a good teacher, a good pupil. — Is Peter a good pupil? — Yes, but Mike is a better pupil and Bob is the best. Milk is good for children. It's very good of you to help your parents.

bad — worse — (the) worst, a bad boy, a bad pupil, a bad egg, bad fish, bad food. The fish was so bad that we couldn't eat it. I think Nick plays hockey worse than Mike. This story is worse than that one. This old hat is certainly the worst to wear. From bad to worse. Things go from bad to worse.

interesting — more interesting — the most interesting, an interesting book, an interesting film, an interesting game. I think that the game leap-frog is more interesting than tag. — And what do you think is the most interesting game? — I think that hopscotch is the most interesting game.

5 Look at the pictures and say what they are wearing on their heads and feet.





Let Us Read and Learn

- 6 Enjoy your English and sing the song “What Do You Wear?”,
 61.

I. What do you wear on your head?

A hat.

What do you wear on your head?

A cap.

A hat and a cap. } 2 times

A cap and a hat. }

II. What do you wear on your feet?

Shoes.

What do you wear on your feet?

Boots.

Boots and shoes. } 2 times

Shoes and boots. }

- 7 Read and learn the proverb. Give the Russian equivalent.

That's another pair of shoes.

- 8 Listen, read and learn,  62.

Mrs Grey: I'd like a pair of shoes, please.

*Shop assistant:*¹ What colour would you like?

Mrs Grey: Brown.

Shop assistant: And what size² do you want?

Mrs Grey: Five. Can I try them on?³

Shop assistant: Of course.

¹ shop assistant ['jɒp əsɪstənt] — продавец

² size [saɪz] — размер

³ try on ['traɪ 'ɒn] — примерять

Let Us Talk _____

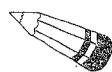


- 9 Now Mrs Grey is going to buy a pair of boots (a hat, a cap). Role-play the dialogue between Mrs Grey and the shop assistant (see Exercise 8).
- 10 Compare these animals.



- 11 Choose any toys or pictures (or draw pictures of your own) and compare them.

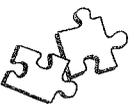
Let Us Write _____



- 12 Choose and write any 6 comparisons (see Exercise 1).
- 13 Learn to write these words.

interesting, wear (wore), hat, cap

Puzzle Time _____



- 14 Make sure you remember the words well. Change the letters to make up new words.

Example rose – nose 4
big, take, silk, talk, look, life, carrot, bear, box, boy, now, peck,
cat, foot, food

61 The Sixty-first Lesson

Lesson Sixty-one

Let Us Learn _____



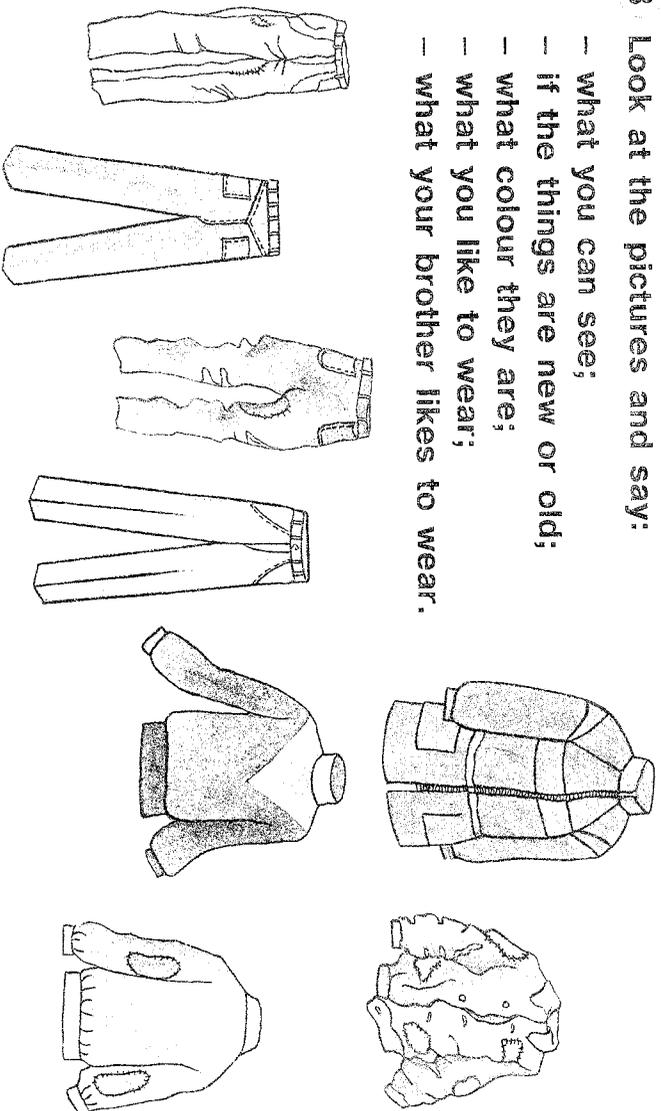
1 How many sentences can you make up? Who is the best?

The book	bigger	
The toys	more beautiful	
The children	better	
The street	nicer	
The hat	was	older
The film	were	longer
The animal	worse	
The food	newer	
The stories	cleverer	
The woman	more interesting	than he thought.
	tastier	

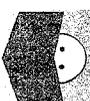
2 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  63.

3 Look at the pictures and say:

- what you can see;
- if the things are new or old;
- what colour they are;
- what you like to wear;
- what your brother likes to wear.



Let Us Read and Learn _____



- 4 Enjoy your English and sing the song "What Do You Wear?",  64.

III. What do you wear on your hands?

Gloves.¹

What do you wear on your hands?

Mittens.²

Gloves and mittens.

} 2 times

Mittens and gloves.

- 5 Listen, read and learn,  65.

Shoes and boots,
Boots and shoes,
Come and buy
The size you use.³

Try them on
Before you choose,
Shoes and boots,
Boots and shoes.

- 6 Read and learn the proverb. Give the Russian equivalent.

Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today.

Let Us Read _____



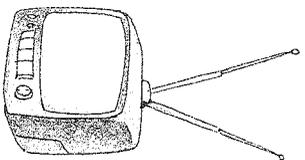
- 7 Can you choose not more than 6–7 sentences to give the main idea of the tale? Read them aloud.

Once in a very, very old house there lived a very, very big cat and a lot of very, very little mice.⁴

¹ gloves [glʌvz] — перчатки

² mittens [ˈmɪtnz] — варежки

³ use [juːz] = wear



TV set

The cat, whose name was Tom, lived in the kitchen.¹
The mice lived under the kitchen.

Where could the little mice get food to eat? In the kitchen, of course! But there was the cat there! He could eat them!

They thought what to do. They thought and thought, and thought ...

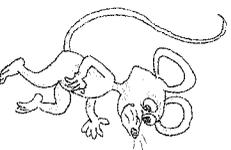
Then a very, very little mouse had an idea. She said, "Let's go to the kitchen when Tom is not there."

"That's not a bad idea!" said Mother-mouse. "But the cat runs quicker² than you. He can catch³ and eat you."

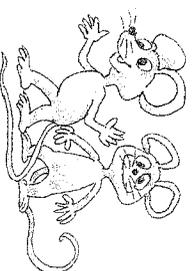
All the mice thought and thought and thought again ... Then the mouse who was older than the other mice said: "I think I know what to do. Let's buy a TV set for Tom.

We all know that he likes watching TV very much. When he is busy watching TV we can eat all the food we want."

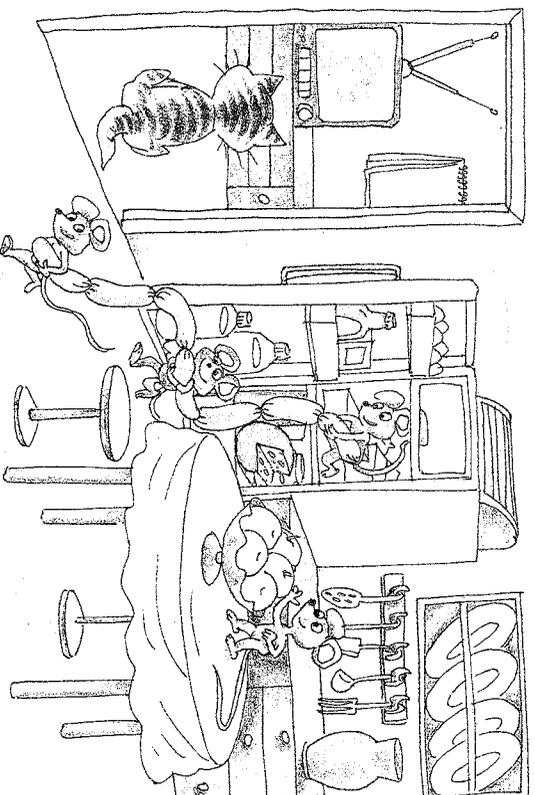
All the mice liked the idea very much. So they went to the shop and bought a TV set for Tom.



mouse



mice



¹ kitchen ['kɪʃən] — кухня

² quicker ['kwɪkə] — быстрее

³ catch [kæʃ] — ловить, поймать

Clothing

Now every evening Tom watches TV and the mice have a very good supper in the kitchen. They can eat all the things they want.

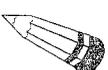
Let Us Talk _____



8 Tell your classmates a summary of the tale.

9 Make or draw a doll and say what it is wearing.

Let Us Write _____



10 Make up 6 sentences and write them down (see Exercise 1).

11 Learn to write these words.

bad — worse — the worst; good — better — the best;
shoe, boot

Puzzle Time _____



12 Guess the word.

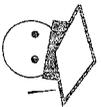
This is the code.

1. The first letter of “ s o m e t i m e s ”;
2. the second letter of “ t w e n t y ”;
3. the fourth letter of “ i n t e r e s t i n g ”;
4. the second letter of “ h a m s t e r ”;
5. the fifth letter of “ r i g h t ”;
6. the eighth letter of “ t o r t o i s e ”;
7. the sixth letter of “ f a v o u r i t e ”.

62 The Sixty-second Lesson

Lesson Sixty-two

Let Us Learn

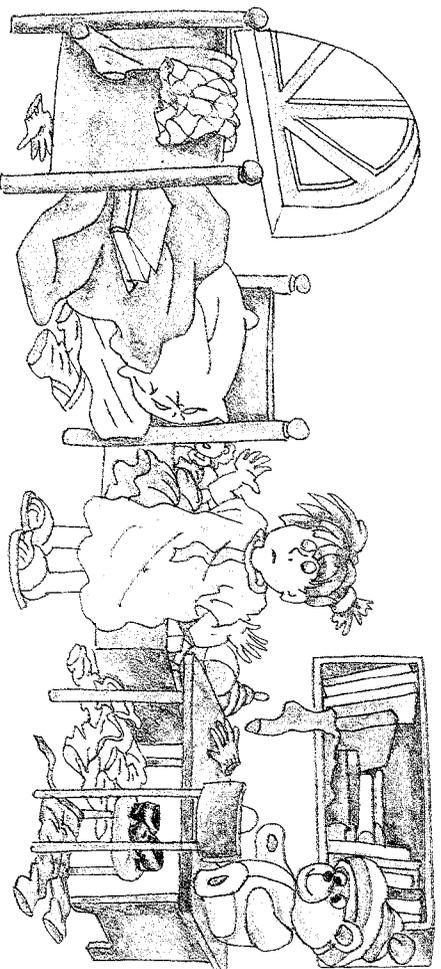


1 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

- [i:] tea, teach, meat, eat, clean, jeans, a pair of jeans, blue jeans, black jeans, new jeans, old jeans. My jeans are old, and Mum is going to buy me a new pair of jeans. Boys and girls like to wear jeans.
- [e] head, bread, pleasure, sweater, a sweater — sweaters, a nice sweater, a grey and black sweater. My sister thinks that a sweater goes well with jeans. Oh, what a nice sweater it is!
- [aʊ] mouth, houses, trousers, a pair of trousers, brown trousers, grey trousers. — Do you wear jeans or trousers to school? — I usually wear trousers. Yesterday Dad bought a new pair of grey trousers.
- [æ] hamster, black, Jack, jacket, a jacket — jackets, an old jacket, a new jacket. My old jacket is grey. My new jacket is blue. I like my new jacket.

2 Sue never knows where her things are. And now she is looking for her things. What does she say?

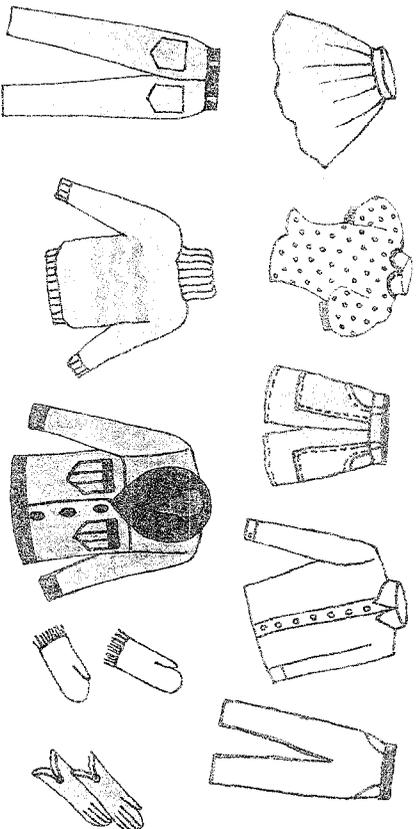
Example *Where is (are) my ... , I wonder?*



3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  66.

4 Look at the pictures and make the sentences complete.

When it's ... I wear ...



Let Us Read and Learn



5  Enjoy your English and sing the song "What Do You Wear?",  67.

IV. What do you wear when it's cold?1

A sweater.

What do you wear when it's cold?

A jacket.

A sweater and a jacket.

A jacket and a sweater.

} 2 times

V. What do you wear when it's warm?2

Shorts.

What do you wear when it's warm?

A shirt.

Shorts and a shirt.

A shirt and shorts.

} 2 times

1 it's cold [kəʊld] — холодно
2 it's warm [wɔ:m] — тепло

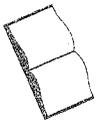
6 Listen, read and learn,  68.



grasshopper

Little Grasshopper lives in the fields.¹
He is a nice funny fellow.
His coat² is green, his hat is blue,
His trousers are brown and yellow.

Let Us Read _____

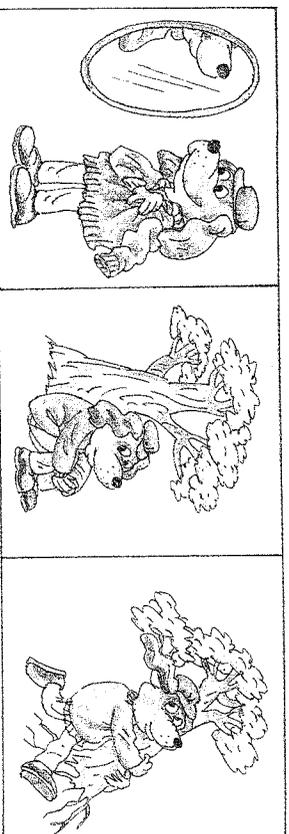


7 Read the text and say what you think of Pif.

Pif is a funny little dog. There are a lot of books about Pif. English children like to read them. Now you can read about Pif, too.

Pif wants to go for a walk. He puts on³ his blue jeans, a grey sweater, brown boots, a red cap and goes for a walk.

Suddenly it begins to rain.⁴ Pif hasn't got an umbrella.⁵ He is cold. He is very cold.



He sees a tree. He runs up to the tree and sits down under it.
“How can I get home, I wonder?” Pif thinks. “I don't want to sit here all alone⁶ under the tree. I'm cold and hungry. I want to get home. But how can I? I haven't got an umbrella! Where can I get one? Oh, that's a good idea!”

1 field [fi:ld] — поле

2 coat [kəʊt] — пиджак

3 put on [ˈpʊt ˈɒn] — надевать

4 it begins to rain [ɪt bɪˈɡɪnz tə ˈreɪn] — начинается дождь

5 umbrella [ʌmˈbrɛlə] — зонт

6 all alone [ˈɔ:l əˈləʊn] — совсем один

Pif takes the tree like an umbrella and goes home.
I don't think that Pif did the right thing.
And what do you think?

- 8 Choose and read aloud the sentences which are true to the story.

Pif is a funny little monkey.

Pif is a funny little dog.

Pif wants to go for a walk.

Pif doesn't want to go for a walk.

He is wearing black jeans and a blue jacket.

He is wearing blue jeans, a grey sweater, brown boots and a red cap.

Pif hasn't got an umbrella.

Pif has got an umbrella.

Pif sees a house.

Pif sees a tree.

Pif takes the tree like an umbrella and sits down.

Pif takes the tree like an umbrella and runs home.

Let Us Talk _____



- 9 Play a "Memory Game". Look at your classmates for a minute and try to remember what they are wearing. Then close your eyes and say it.

- 10 Talk to each other on the topic "Shopping". These questions can help you.

Who usually goes shopping in your family?

Do you often go shopping?

When did you go shopping last time?

Who did you go shopping with?

What new things did you buy?

What size shoes do you wear?

Do you usually try shoes (jeans ...) on before you buy them?

What colour shoes (jeans) do you like to wear?

How do you usually choose things before you buy them?

What do you usually wear at home?

What do you wear when you go to school (to a party)?
What do you wear when it's cold (warm)?

Let Us Write



- 11 Write 7 questions. Begin them with: *did, who, when, whom, what, what colour jeans, what colour shoes.*

Yesterday Mother bought her daughter a pair of blue jeans and white shoes.

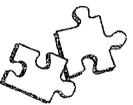
- 12 Choose the correct word and copy the sentences.

1. Lions are (*clever, cleverer, the cleverest*) than tigers. 2. The (*clever, cleverer, cleverest*) domestic animals are the horse and the dog. 3. The (*clever, cleverer, cleverest*) wild animals are monkeys. 4. The (*big, bigger, biggest*) animal is the elephant. 5. The giraffe's neck is (*long, longer, the longest*) than the tiger's.

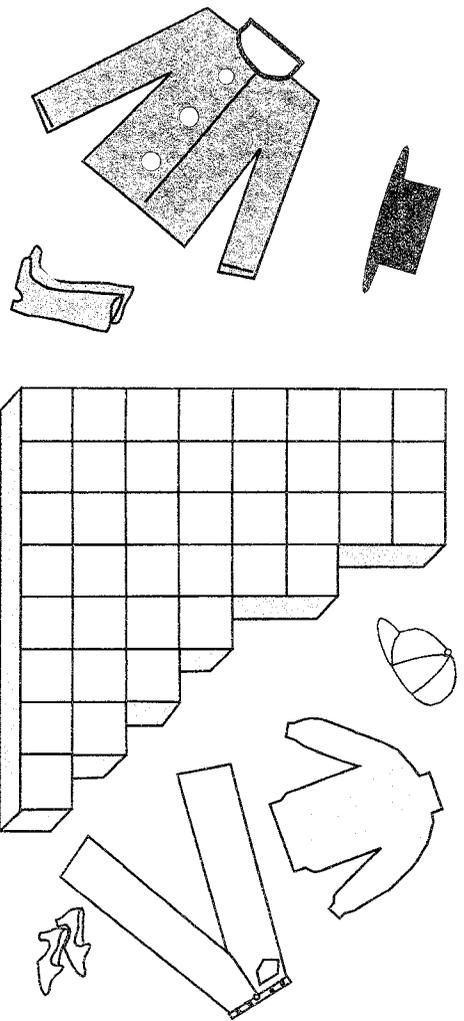
- 13 Learn to write these words.

jeans, trousers, sweater, jacket

Puzzle Time



- 14 Build up the "ladder" ("Clothes").



63 The Sixty-third Sixty-three

64 The Sixty-fourth Sixty-four

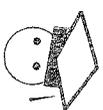
65 The Sixty-fifth Sixty-five
Text "Cinderella", part II

66 The Sixty-sixth Sixty-six

67 The Sixty-seventh **Lesson**

Sixty-seven

Let Us Learn _____



1 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  70.

2 Read the new words.
tomorrow [to'mɒrəʊ] next [nekst]



tomorrow, next week, next month ...

I	}	tomorrow	}	next	}	I
We						We
He	}	tomorrow	}	next	}	He
She						She
It						It
You						You
They	}	tomorrow	}	next	}	They

(see part 2, p. 152)

3 Read and compare.

Every day I get up at 7 o'clock.

Tomorrow I shall (I'll) get up at 9 o'clock.

Usually my brother takes our dog for a walk.

Tomorrow I'll take our dog for a walk.

We often visit Granny.

We'll visit Granny next week.

Every morning they have porridge for breakfast.

Next morning they'll have eggs for breakfast.

Every year she goes to London to visit her relatives.

Next year she'll go to London to visit her relatives, too.

Dick usually wears jeans.

Tomorrow he'll wear trousers.

4 What will they do? Make up as many true sentences as you can and read them aloud.

Helen

watch TV.

my parents

celebrate Mum's birthday.

Tomorrow

our family

invite my friends to my birthday party.

Next week

my friend and I shall

go to the Zoo.

Next month

I

will

go to America.

Next year

my brother

play chess.

Jack

buy a new TV set.

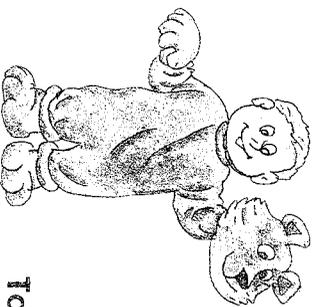
play badminton.

make toys for little children.

5 a) The children want to play "Zoo". They have got masks of different animals. What does each of them say?

Example

*I shall be a bear. I shall put on the mask of a bear.
I shall walk like a bear.*



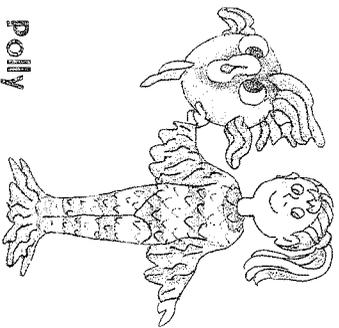
Tony

Kitty



b) Now talk about each of them.

Example Polly will be a fish. She will put on the mask of a fish. She will swim like a fish.



Polly



Dick

6 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[ɔ:] horse, tortoise, short, shorts, a pair of shorts, new shorts, old shorts. — What colour shorts do you like? — I like blue and grey shorts, and you?

warm — warmer — the warmest, warm water, warm milk. When I'm ill, Mum always gives me warm milk. It's warm. It's warm today. It wasn't warm yesterday. It was warmer yesterday than it's today. They say it'll be warm tomorrow. — Do you wear jeans when it's warm? — No, I wear shorts when it's warm.

[aʊ] mouth, mouse, house — houses, blouse, a blouse — blouses, a white blouse, a beautiful blouse. You look great in that new blouse! I think that Mother's new blouse is beautiful.

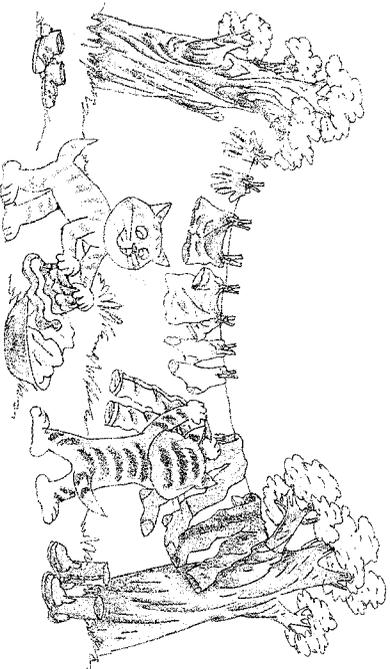
[ɜ:] bird, girl, skirt, a skirt — skirts, a short skirt, a long skirt, a skirt and a blouse, a black skirt and a white blouse. My mother likes to wear a white blouse and a blue skirt. Does your mother like to wear short skirts or long skirts?

[ɜ:] shirt, a shirt — shirts, a white shirt, a grey shirt. I like to wear shirts and my mother likes to wear blouses. Tomorrow we shall buy a new shirt for my brother.

[əʊ] old, cold, cold — colder — the coldest, cold water, cold meat. Dad likes to eat cold meat and vegetables for supper. It's cold.

It's cold today. It was colder yesterday. They say it'll not be cold tomorrow. What do you wear when it's cold?

7  71. Enjoy your English and sing the song "The Kittens' Clothes",¹



Jeans and trousers,
Sweaters and shirts,
Socks² and tights,³
And jackets and skirts.
T-shirts,⁴ shoes,
High boots⁵ and mittens,
These are the clothes
Of the kittens.

8  Listen, read and learn,  72.

What are you going to do
When you are twenty-two?

I'll write a story,
I'll make a plane,
I'll teach children,
I'll make rain.

What are you going to be
When you are twenty-three?

I'll be a pilot,
I'll be a doctor,
I'll be a teacher,
I'll be a worker.

-
- 1 clothes [klaʊðz] — одежда
 - 2 socks [sɒks] — носки
 - 3 tights [taɪts] — колготки
 - 4 T-shirt ['ti:ʃɜ:t] — футболка
 - 5 high boots [ˈhaɪ 'bʊts] — сапоги

Where are you going to be
When you are twenty-three?

I'll be in London,

I'll be in Rome, I

I'll be in Africa,

I'll be home.

What are you going to do

When you are one hundred and two?

I don't know.

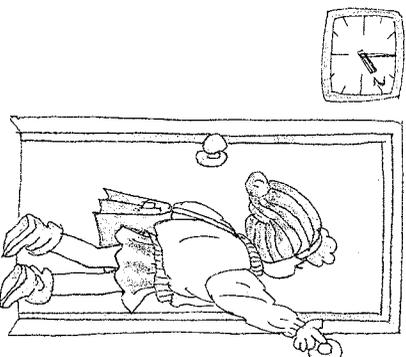
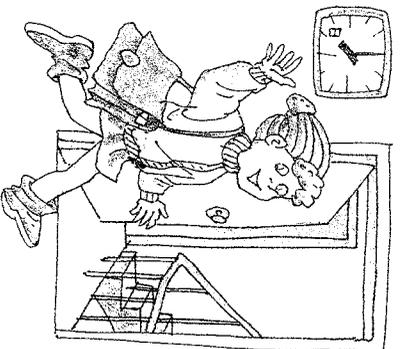
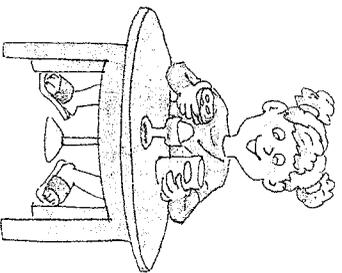
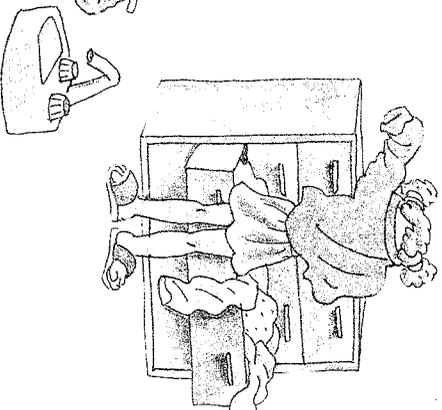
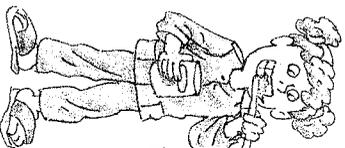
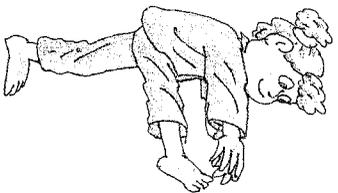
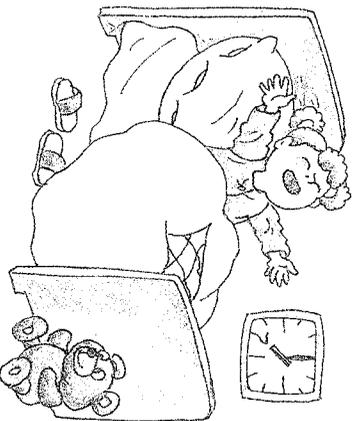
Do you?

Let Us Talk

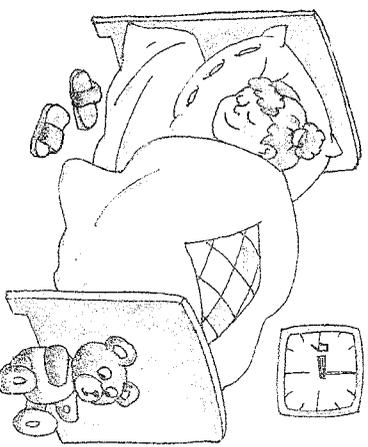
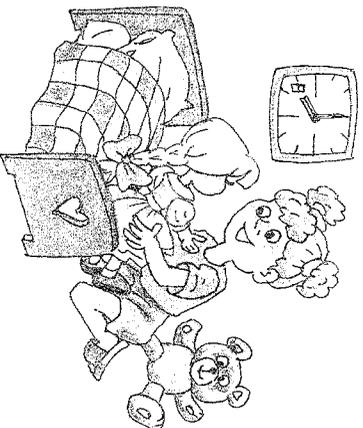
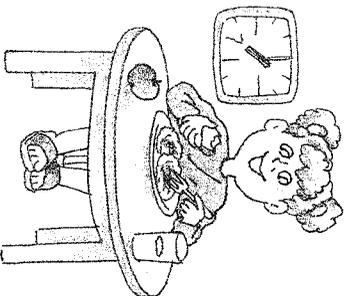
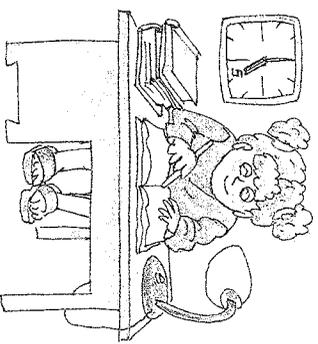
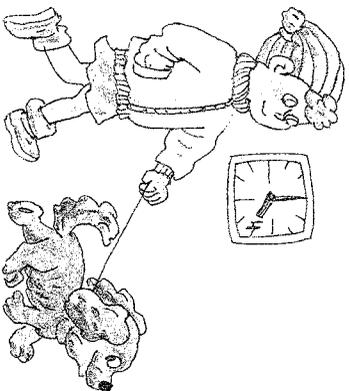
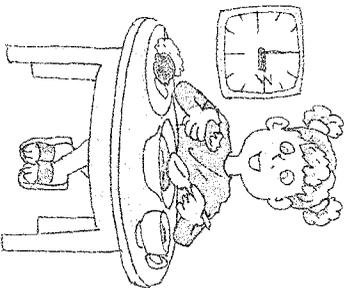


9 Look at the pictures and say:

- what Jane usually does at ... o'clock;
- what she is doing now;
- what she will do tomorrow at ... o'clock.



I Rome [room] - Pm



10 Do you know what you'll do tomorrow? Tell your classmates about it.

Let Us Write _____

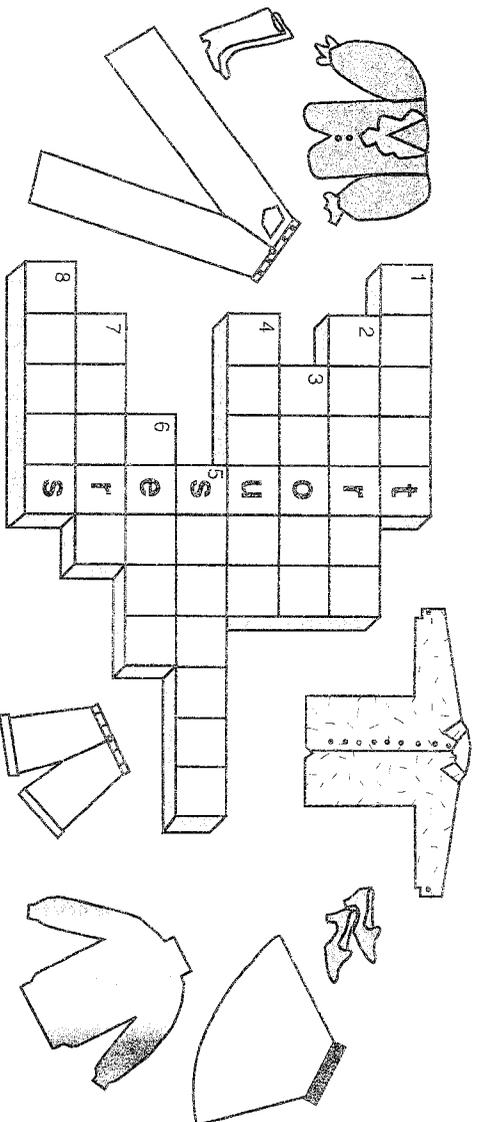
11 Make up any 6 sentences and write them down (see Exercise 4).

12 Learn to write these words.

shirt, blouse, shorts, skirt

Puzzle Time _____

13 Complete the crossword ("Clothes").



68 The Sixty-eighth Lesson

Lesson Sixty-eight



TOMORROW

?

<p>shall</p> <p>I we he she it you they</p>	<p>play?</p>	<p>Yes,</p> <p>I we he she it you they</p>	<p>will.</p>	<p>No,</p> <p>I we he she it you they</p>	<p>shall not = shan't. [ʃɑnt]</p> <p>will not = won't. [wɒnt]</p>
---------------------------------------------	--------------	--------------------------------------------	--------------	-------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------

—

I	} shall not	} play ...
We		
He	} will not	
She		
It		
You		
They		

(see part 2, p. 152—153)

1 Find out what your classmates will do tomorrow, next week, next month, next year. Let them answer your questions.

come to school	tomorrow?
go for a walk	next week?
go shopping with Mum	next month?
help your granny about the house	next year?
buy a new TV set	
go to the Zoo	
go to the swimming pool	
put on your new dress	
visit your friend	
come to see your granny	
go to Kiev	

2 a) This boy is a boaster. Read what he says.

- Tomorrow I shall eat ten eggs for breakfast.
- Tomorrow I shall watch TV at night.
- Tomorrow I shall buy a lot of new things.
- Tomorrow I shall send presents to all my friends.
- Tomorrow I shall go to London.
- Tomorrow I shall play chess with a champion.



- Tomorrow I shall take a cold shower ten times a day.
- Tomorrow I shall put on new white jeans to play football.

b) Express your doubt.

Example Will you eat ten eggs for breakfast?

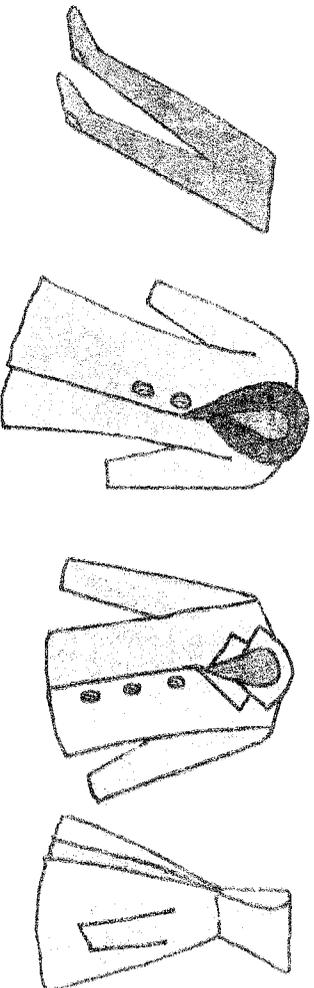
c) Disagree with him.

Example You'll not eat ten eggs for breakfast.

3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  73.

4 Look at the pictures and say:

- what colour are these things;
- what you like (don't like) to wear;
- what you will put on tomorrow;
- what your sister will not put on tomorrow.



Let Us Read and Learn



5 Listen, read and learn the poem "Let's Play",  74.

I shall be a lion,
And you will be a bear.
I shall run after you
And you'll hide under the chair.

6 Listen, read and learn,  75.

Mrs Smith: Good afternoon.

Shop assistant: Good afternoon, Mrs Smith.

Mrs Smith: Could you change¹ this sweater, please? I bought it yesterday for my son.

Shop assistant: Why? What's wrong with it?²

Mrs Smith: It's the wrong size.

Shop assistant: Is it too big or too small?³

Mrs Smith: It's too small for him.

Shop assistant: I'm sure this sweater will be the right size for your son.

Mrs Smith: Thanks a lot.



Let Us Read

7 Read the dialogue and say why Mother is angry.

Mother: Pete, it's seven o'clock. It's time to have breakfast and go to school. What are you doing?

Pete: I'm putting on my shirt. Where are my socks, I wonder? Oh, I don't know where my shoes are! And where are my trousers? Mum, please come and help me!

Mother: Here are your socks, shoes and trousers. And what is there in your pockets,⁴ I wonder?

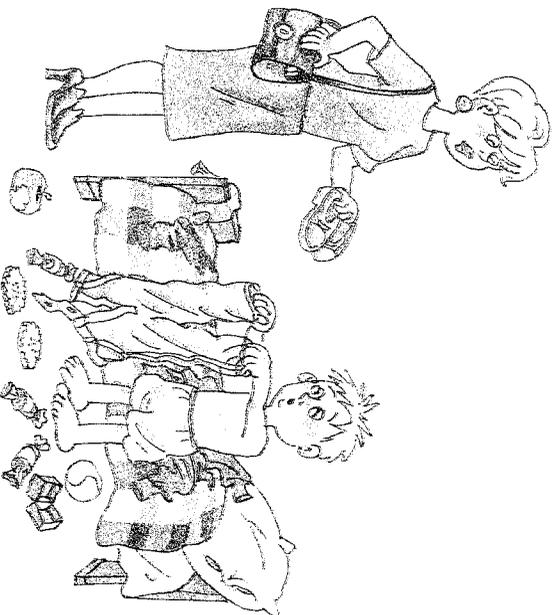
Pete: Oh, some little things.

1 change [tʃeɪndʒ] — поменять

2 What's wrong [wɒt] with it? — Чем он вас не устраивает?

3 small [smɔ:l] — мал (маленький)

4 pocket ['pɒkɪt] — карман



Mother. Let us see what those little things are: a box, a tennis ball, three sweets, two cookies, an apple ...! Oh, Pete! You must not keep those things in your pockets! Dress quickly! and have your breakfast. Look at the clock! It's time for me to go to my office! When you go to school, put on your cap, your warm jacket and mittens. It's cold today. Now, look here, Pete, next time when you don't know where your things are I shall not help you!

- 8 Choose and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the picture.

Let Us Talk _____



- 9 Answer the questions.

1. What was the time when Pete got up?
2. Why couldn't he dress quickly?
3. What did he ask Mum to do?
4. What things did Mother give to Pete?
5. What was there in Pete's pockets?

¹ quickly ['kwɪkli] — быстро

² office ['ɒfɪs] — *догадываеть о значении этого слова*

6. Will Pete put on his cap, his warm jacket and mittens? Why?
7. Do you think Pete's mother will help him next time?
8. Do you always know where your things are?
9. Is it good to have the right thing in the right place? Why?

10 Try to tell the text in your own words.

11 Mrs McDonald bought the wrong size jeans (skirt, blouse ...) for her daughter. Role-play the dialogue between Mrs McDonald and the shop assistant (see Exercise 6).



Let Us Write

12 Refer the sentences to the future.

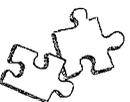
1. — What ... you buy for your mother as a birthday present?
— I ... buy a box of sweets. 2. — ... you invite Bill to your birthday party? — Yes, I 3. — Nina ... not go to school tomorrow. She is ill. 4. — Where ... we go next month? — We ... not go to Kiev, we ... go to Odessa. 5. — When ... you do your homework? — I ... do it at four o'clock.

13 Look at the picture (Exercise 2 b, c): express your doubt (write 4 sentences); disagree with the boy (write 4 sentences).

14 Learn to write these words.

put on, take off, next, tomorrow

Puzzle Time



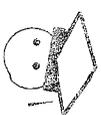
15 What does the message say? (For the code see Lesson 53, "Puzzle Time".)

2085 1897820 2089147 914 2085 1897820 1612135

69 The Sixty-ninth **Lesson**

Sixty-nine

Let Us Learn _____



- 1 Are you curious? Ask your classmates what they will do tomorrow, in the evening, next week, next month, next year. Use the words in the box.

Example Will you read in the evening?

teach make a cake send visit watch TV put on
 help buy write take your pet for a walk come to see
 invite wear say goodbye celebrate open take off go

- 2 Say what you (your father, mother ...) won't do tomorrow, in the evening, next week, next month, next year.

Examples

I shan't go to the swimming pool next week.

My brother won't play hockey tomorrow.



Tomorrow Father and Bob will go to the shop to buy a present for Mum.

Will they go to the shop?

Will they buy a present for Mum or for Granny?

Will they go to the shop tomorrow or next week?

Who will go to the shop?

When will they go to the shop?

Where will they go tomorrow?

Why will they go to the shop?

With whom will Bob go to the shop?

What will they buy?

For whom will they buy a present?

- 3 Ask questions for more information.

Tomorrow Nora will go to the Zoo with her Grandpa.

- 4 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[wɒ] coat, a coat — coats, a new coat, an old coat, a brown coat. I think a blue coat goes well with white trousers.

over, overcoat, an overcoat — overcoats. — Do you wear an overcoat or a jacket when it's cold? — I always wear an overcoat when it's cold.

[eɪ] tail, rain, raincoat, a raincoat — raincoats. I don't often put on my raincoat. I don't like to wear raincoats.

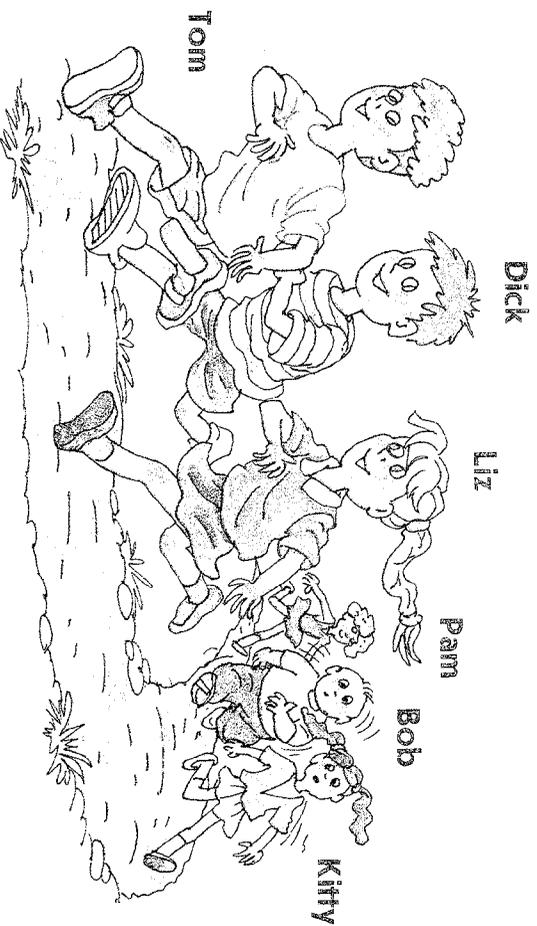
[aɪ] night, right, tights, brown tights, grey tights, these tights, those tights. — What colour tights do you like to wear? — I like to wear blue tights. What size tights do you wear?

- 5 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  76.

- 6 Look at the pictures and say how they run.

Examples Dick can run quickly.

Pam can't run quickly.



Let Us Read and Learn

- 7 Read and learn the proverb. Give the Russian equivalent.

Tastes differ.

- 8 Listen, read and learn,  77.

Ann: Mum, we are going to the theatre! with Granny, and Brett doesn't want to put on his new coat and trousers.

Mother: Oh, Brett, why don't you want to put on your new coat and your new trousers, I wonder? They are so nice! They suit you? so well! You'll look great!³

Brett: Tastes differ, I don't like new clothes!

Let Us Read _____



- 9 Read the story and say what you think of Fred and Peg.

Fred and his little sister Peg went for a walk. It was a cold day. Fred put on his warm brown trousers, a sweater, a cap, a jacket, warm boots and mittens. Peg put on a warm sweater, blue jeans, an overcoat, high boots, a warm cap and gloves. They took their dog Rover with them. The dog didn't have a coat or boots on and soon he was very cold. Rover wanted to go home.

The children were sorry for the dog and went home. Suddenly Peg said, "Oh, look, Fred! There's a little bird in the tree. I think the bird is cold, too. And it's hungry! Let us give it some food to eat!"

"That's a good idea!" said Fred.

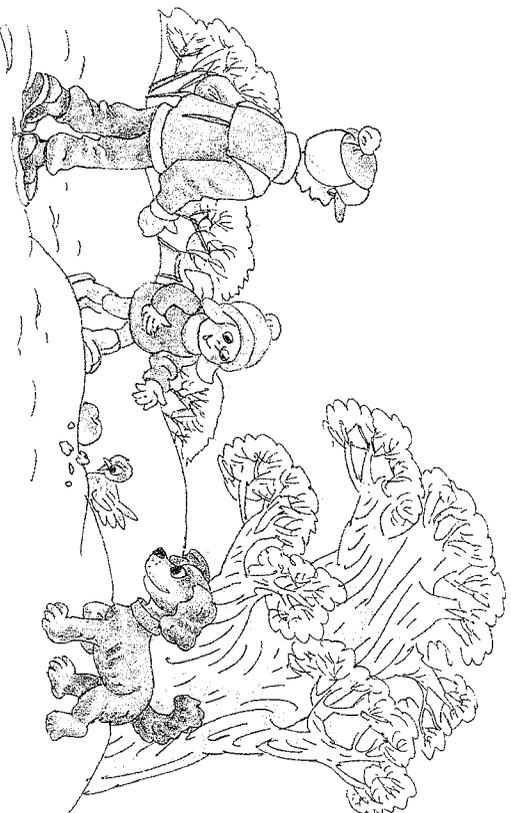
When the children came home, they asked Granny to give them some bread and an apple. "What for?" asked Granny. "Are you hungry? Look at the clock! You had your dinner only 20 minutes ago."⁴

1 theatre ['θɪətə] — театр

2 suit [sju:t] you — идет тебе

3 look great ['lʊk 'ɡreɪt] — выглядеть великолепно

4 ago [ə'ɡəʊ] — тому назад



“Oh, no, Granny! We are not hungry! But the bird is. We want to give the bread and the apple to the bird. It’s over there! in the tree. It’s cold and hungry!”

“It’s very good of you to take care of birds,” said Granny and gave the children what they asked for.

The children went out into the street. They came up to the tree where the bird was and put the bread and the apple under it. The bird ate the bread and the apple and said, “Pee, pee, peel..”

Do you know what the bird said? It said, “Thank you very much, Fred and Peg!”

A friend in need is a friend indeed.

- 10 Choose and read aloud 5–6 sentences to sum up the most important facts of the story.
- 11 Choose the best title for the story: “The Bird’s Friends”, “A Friend in Need Is a Friend Indeed”, “It Was Good of Them to Do It”.

Let Us Talk _____

- 12 Try to tell the story in the shortest possible way. Whose summary is the shortest?
- 13 Do you take care of birds and animals? How do you do it?

over there [’əʊvə ’ðeə] — BÖH TAM

- 14 Tomorrow you won't go to school. What are your plans for tomorrow? What will you do?

Let Us Write _____



- 15 Ask questions for more information. Begin them with the words given in brackets.
- Mother will wear her new blouse. (*When*)
 - Pat will go to the Zoo. (*With whom*)
 - The boys will play hockey. (*Where*)
 - Alice will put it on tomorrow. (*What*)
 - Father will buy a new overcoat. (*What colour*)
 - He will wear a black hat. (*Who*)

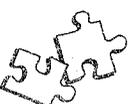
- 16 Ask questions for more information. Write as many questions as you can.

They will go there.

- 17 Learn to write these words.

tights, coat, overcoat, raincoat

Puzzle Time _____



18 Complete the crossword ("Clothes").

1										
2										
3										

Illustrations of clothing items: a blouse, a raincoat, a pair of tights, a pair of trousers, a pair of shoes, a pair of socks, a pair of gloves, a pair of mittens, a pair of boots, a pair of slippers, a pair of socks, a pair of shoes, a pair of boots, a pair of slippers, a pair of socks, a pair of shoes, a pair of boots, a pair of slippers.

70 The Seventieth Lesson

Lesson Seventy

Let Us Learn



- 1 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  78.
- 2 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[e] bed, leg, left, well, very well, do well, read well, write well, play chess well. — What can you do well? — I think I can swim well. — What can't you do well? — I can't skate well. — Can your brother play chess well? — Yes, he can play chess very well.

[əʊ] no, know, grow, slow, slow — slower — the slowest. Don't be so slow! Slow — slowly. John is a slow runner — he runs slowly. Sally, why are you dressing so slowly?

[ɪ] big, pig, fish, quick, quick — quicker — the quickest. Mary is a quick runner. Liz is quicker. Polly is the quickest runner. Be quick! Be quick and eat your lunch! Quick — quickly. Do it quickly! Read it as quickly as you can. — Can you run quickly? — I think I can. Time goes so quickly!

[eɪ] day, day off, on days off. — What do you usually do on your days off? — On my days off I always go to the swimming pool with Dad. — Will you go to the theatre on your day off? — Yes, I shall.

[e] ten, red, neck, end, weekend, at the weekend, at weekends. We often visit our granny at weekends. — What are your plans for the next weekend? — At the weekend we shall visit our relatives.



bad — badly	quick — quickly
slow — slowly	dear — dearly

good — well

(see part 2, p. 154)

3 Read and compare.

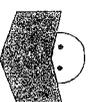
She is a slow reader.	She reads slowly.
He is a quick runner.	He runs quickly.
She is a bad cook.	She cooks badly.
He is a good footballer.	He plays football well.

4 Read and say:

- who is the best at English;
- who is the worst at English;
- who is the best tennis-player;
- who is the worst footballer.

Charlie speaks English well. Dan speaks English better than Charlie. Mary speaks English better than Dan. Mike speaks English badly. Sue speaks English worse than Mike. Roy speaks English worse than Sue. Helen plays tennis well. Jane plays tennis better than Helen. Kate plays tennis better than Jane. Jack plays football badly. Tom plays football worse than Jack. Nick plays football worse than Tom.

Let Us Read and Learn



5 Read and learn the proverb. Give the Russian equivalent.

If you cannot have the best, make the best of what you have.

6 Listen, read and learn,  79.

Who said "Goodnight"
 When I was a child?
 My mother.
 Who dressed my dolls in clothes so gay!
 And showed² me often how to play?
 My¹ mother.

¹ gay [geɪ] — весёлый

² show [ʃəʊ] — показывать

Who ran to help me when I fell!
And who could funny stories tell?

My mother.

Who sits at my head when I am in bed?

My mother.

Who is so nice, who is so kind,

Another so dear you'll never find?

My mother.

Let Us Read _____



7 Read and say if Mother liked the cake.

Tomorrow it will be Saturday. It'll be my Mummy's birthday! She'll be thirty-one. But she looks twenty, she really² does! My Dad and I will get up early³ in the morning, when Mum is still asleep.⁴ We'll clean the house and go to the shop to buy presents for Mother. I don't know what we'll buy. We shall see. But of course we'll buy flowers. All women like flowers, you know! I think we'll buy a beautiful blouse for her. She likes to wear blouses. We shall buy tasty things, too: sweets, chocolate, ice cream, cookies, apples, oranges, bananas and what not!

When Mum gets up we'll congratulate her on her birthday. We'll give her the presents and sing the song:

Happy birthday to you,

Happy birthday to you,

Happy birthday, dear Mummy,

Happy birthday to you!

Mother will invite her friends to her birthday party. They will come in the evening at about seven o'clock. Mum will put on her

1 fall (fell [fel]) — падать

2 really ['ri:li] — на самом деле

3 early ['ɜ:li] — рано

4 still asleep ['sti:l ə'sli:p] — всё ещё спит



party dress. Dad will be in his best too. I'll put on my new white shirt and blue trousers. We'll have a good time!

Last year we had a lot of fun that day. Father wanted to make a surprise! for Mother — to cook a birthday cake. When he put the cake on the table Mum asked: "What is it, I wonder?"

"It's my present for you on your birthday. It's a birthday cake. I cooked it for you."

Mum thanked Dad and ate some cake. I wondered how she could eat the cake! It was very bad, it really was! I was very hungry but I couldn't eat it!

The next day, when Dad wasn't at home I asked my Mum, "How could you eat the cake yesterday? Did you like it?"
Mother didn't say anything and smiled.²

8 Find and read aloud the answers to the questions.

1. How old will Mother be?
2. How old does she look?
3. What will Father and his son do in the morning?
4. What will they buy?
5. Why will they buy a blouse?
6. What song will they sing for Mother?
7. What will they put on in the evening?

¹ surprise [se'praiz] — догадываться о значении этого слова

² smile [smail] — улыбаться

8. What present did Father give Mother last year?
9. Why did the boy wonder?

Let Us Talk _____



- 9 Sum up the most important facts of the text.
- 10 Tell your classmates how you'll celebrate your Mother's birthday. Let your classmates ask you questions for more information.

Let Us Write _____

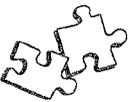


- 11 Your Mother is going to buy some new clothes. She'll make a list of them. What will she write in the list?
- 12 Put in the missing words.
 1. Why are you so ... ? You are dressing so
 2. Tim is a ... chess-player. He plays chess very
 3. Father was a ... cook. He cooked
 4. Peg is a ... reader. She reads

- 13 Learn to write these words.

well, quick — quickly, slow — slowly,
on the day off, at the weekend

Puzzle Time _____



- 14 What's the message? (See the key to the code Lesson 53, "Puzzle Time".)

9 1215225 1325 1315208518 451181225

71 The Seventy-first ~~Lesson~~
~~Lesson~~ Seventy-one

72 The Seventy-second ~~Lesson~~
~~Lesson~~ Seventy-two



79 The Seventy-third Lesson

Lesson Seventy-three

Review 4

Let Us Talk _____



1 Play a game "Shopping List". Who is the winner?

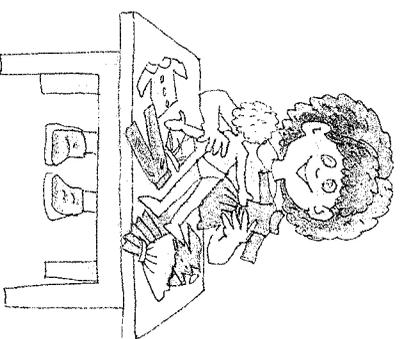
Examples

- *I'll go shopping. I'll buy mittens.*
- *I'll go shopping. I'll buy mittens and a cap.*
- *I'll go shopping. I'll buy mittens, a cap and ...*

2 Play a game "Dress a Doll".

Examples

- 1) — *I am putting a dress on my doll.
Now I am taking the dress off the
doll and putting a blouse on ...*
- 2) — *Take a dress and put it on your doll.
— I'm putting a dress on my doll.
— Now take the dress off your doll
and put a blouse on your doll ...*



3 People wear different clothes. It depends on whether it's cold or warm. What will you wear if it's cold (warm)?

Examples

- *If it's cold tomorrow I'll wear ...*
- *If it's warm tomorrow I'll put on ...*

4 Ted invites Kitty to his birthday party. Act out their conversation.

5 Your friend invites you to come to his (her) birthday party tomorrow. What will you wear? Let your classmates guess.

Example

- *Will you wear ...?*
- *No, I shan't. (Yes, I shall.)*

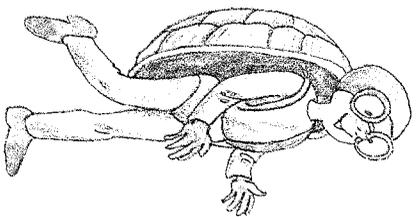
I if [if] — ecm

6 Tell your classmates how you celebrated your birthday.

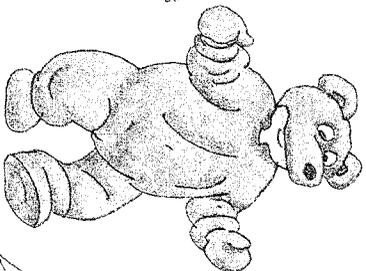
7 The children are going to have a fancy-dress party. They are choosing masks and clothes. What are they saying? Say it for them.

Example

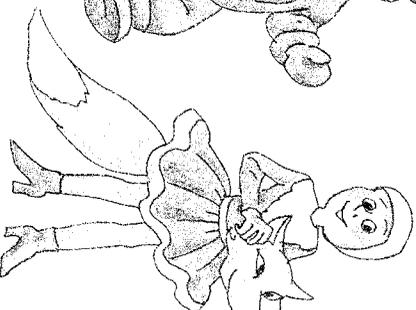
Liz: I shall be a fox. I'll put on the mask of a fox. I'll put on a red dress, a small yellow hat and red shoes. I'll put on a long red tail too. I think I'll look great!



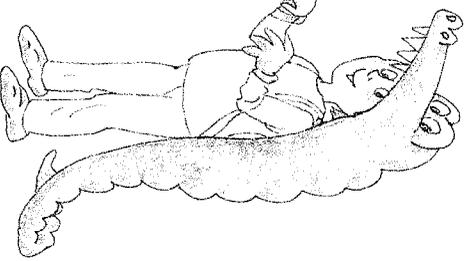
Jill



Bob



Liz



Billy

8 Say what clothes you like to wear and why.

Example

I like to wear a white or a blue blouse. My eyes are blue. I am blonde. I think that white and blue blouses suit me.

9 Listen to the dialogues,  81. Read and act them out. Then make up the dialogues of your own and role-play them.

I

Kitty: Oh, Liz, you look great in that party dress! It's so beautiful. It suits you very well.

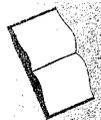
Liz: Thank you. I like it too.

II

Mother: Oh, Sam, you look terrible in that yellow shirt. It doesn't suit you at all.

Sam: Well, I like it. Tastes differ.

Let Us Read _____



10 Find and read aloud:

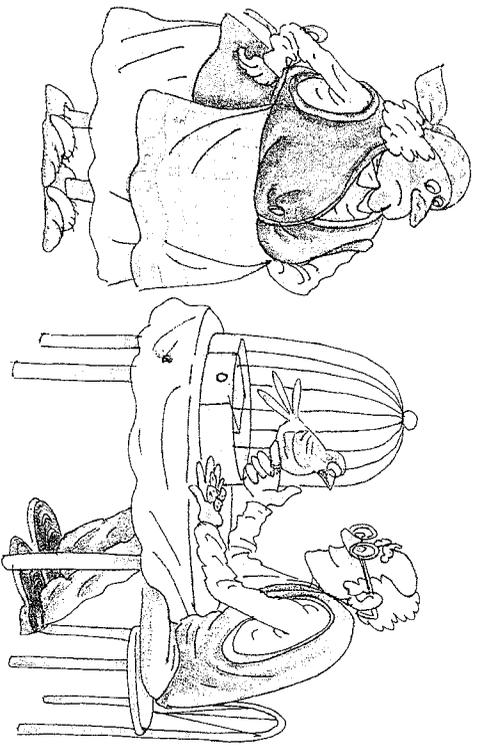
- the names of clothes;
- the names of the parts of the body;
- the words that help you compare things;
- the words that help you describe things;
- the names of animals.

look after, clever, cap, teach — taught, hat, long, lion, short, wear
 — wore, wolf, cleverer, jeans, wolves, interesting, (the) shortest,
 shoes, head, neck, boots, tail, hair, trousers, worse, shorter, bad,
 sweater, eye, must, mouth, left, nose, right, ear, jacket, better,
 different, tree, grow — grew, domestic, favourite, face, wild, (the)
 worst, shirt, animal, quick, foot — feet, blouse, leg, body, slow,
 shorts, shoulder, skirt, finger, (the) best, quickly, toe, tights,
 sheep — sheep, coat, slowly, hamster, beautiful, overcoat, big,
 parrot, nice, raincoat, well, mittens, put on — put on, gloves,
 take off — took off, badly

11 Read the tale and think of a title for it.

Once there lived an old man and an old woman, his wife. They had no children.

The old man had a pet — a bird. It was a little grey bird. The man loved it dearly. He took good care of it. He gave it food and water every morning and every evening.



One day the old man was going to the shop to buy food. He said to his wife: "I'll go to the shop to buy bread, salt, butter, spaghetti and sugar. Please, take good care of the bird! Give it food and water in the morning and in the evening!"

"OK," said his wife. "I will."

It was very cold. The old man put on his warm trousers and boots, a sweater, an overcoat, a warm cap and went away.

The woman didn't give the bird food or water in the morning. She didn't give the bird anything to eat or to drink in the evening. The bird was very hungry and thirsty. Suddenly the bird saw some bread on the table. It ate some bread.

When the woman saw the bird eating the bread, she took the bird and threw it out of the window.¹



When the old man came home, he couldn't see the bird. "Where is my bird?" he asked his wife. "Oh, where is my little bird? Where is my dear little friend?"

"I don't know," said his wife. The old man went to the forest² to look for his bird. He walked, and walked, and walked. He was very cold. But he didn't go back home — he was looking for his dear friend.

At last³ he saw his bird in a tree! He was so happy! He asked the bird to come back home, but the bird didn't want to. The bird said to the old man: "Thank you very much. You took good care of me. But I will not go back home. I don't like your wife."

Then the bird put two baskets⁴ — one large⁵ and the other small — near the old man and said: "Take the basket which you like best and go back home."

¹ threw [θru:] it out of the window ['wɪndəʊ] — выбросила ее из окна

² forest ['fɒrɪst] — лес

³ at last [ət 'lɑ:st] — наконец

⁴ basket ['bɑ:skɪt] — корзина

⁵ large [lɑ:dʒ] — большая

The old man thanked the bird, took the small basket and went home. At home the old woman wanted to see what was in the basket. They opened the basket and saw that it was full of gold.¹ The old man told his wife that the gold was the bird's present.

"You are not clever! I'm cleverer than you! Tell me where your bird is! I'll go to see her. But I'll not take a small basket, I'll take a large one."

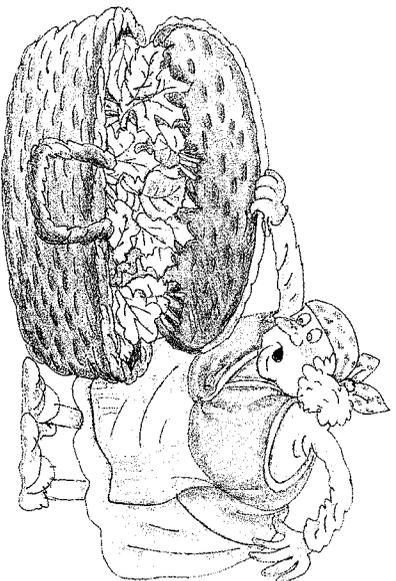
And the old woman ran to the forest. When she saw the old man's bird in the tree, she said: "Hello, dear little bird! I'm so happy to see you! I love you very much! You gave a basket to my husband. Please, give me a basket, too!"

"All right," said the bird, "I'll give you a basket, too."
And the little bird put two baskets near the woman — one large and the other small.

The old woman didn't think long. She quickly took the large basket and ran home. She didn't thank the bird.

When she was back home, she wanted to see what was in the basket and opened it quickly.

And what did she see?
She saw only yellow leaves in it!



12 Agree or disagree.

The old man and his wife had no children.

The old man had a pet — a puppy.

The man loved the bird dearly.

The woman didn't like the bird.

The woman didn't give the bird food or water.

The bird was not hungry or thirsty.

The old man went to the forest to look for the bird.

He was very cold.

He wasn't happy to see the bird.

¹ full of gold [ˈfʊl əv ˈgəʊld] — полна золота

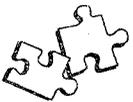
The bird was under a tree.
The man took the small basket.
The woman took the small basket, too.



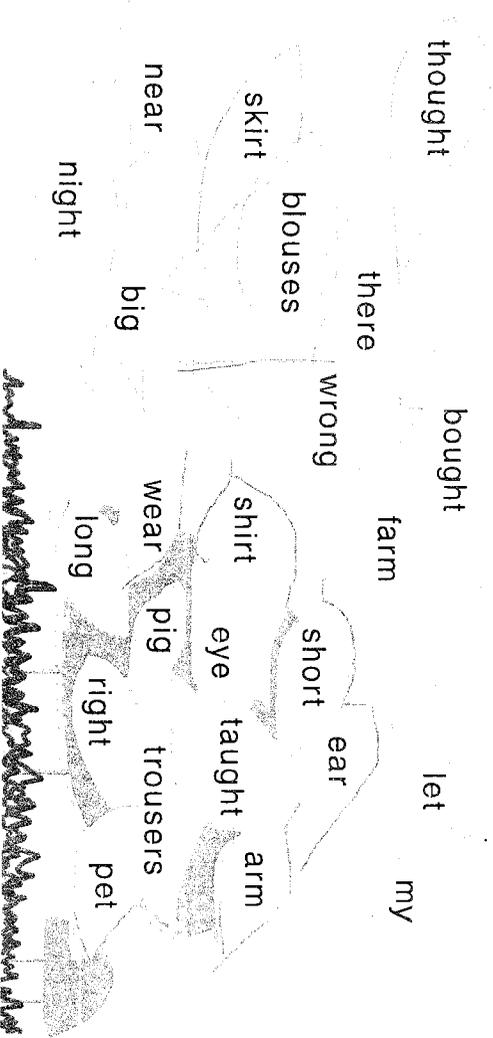
13 Write how you are going to celebrate your birthday.

Let Us Write _____

Puzzle Time _____



14 Find out the rhyming twins and write them down.



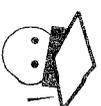
74 The Seventy-fourth ~~Lesson~~ Lesson Seventy-four

Text "Cinderella", part III

75 The Seventy-fifth ~~Lesson~~ Lesson Seventy-five

76 The Seventy-sixth **Lesson** Seventy-six

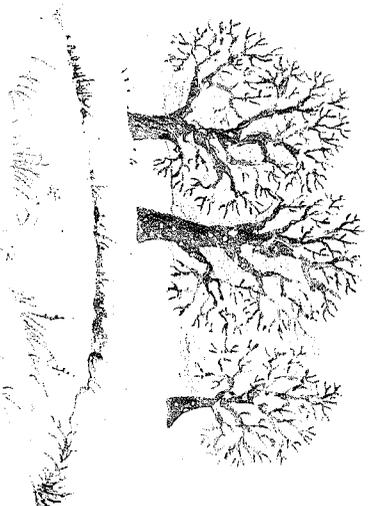
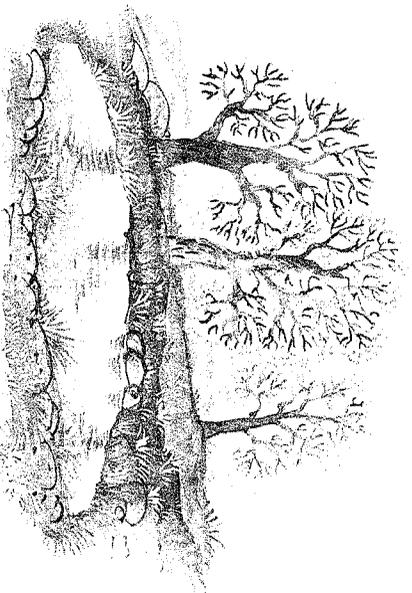
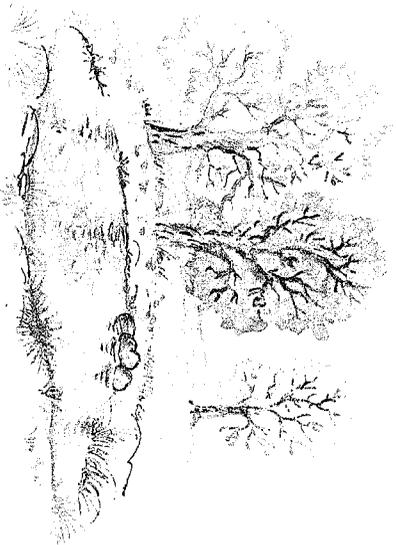
Let Us Learn _____



- 1 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  83.
- 2 a) Look at the pictures and name the seasons.

Example

It's ...



b) Say what season comes after ...

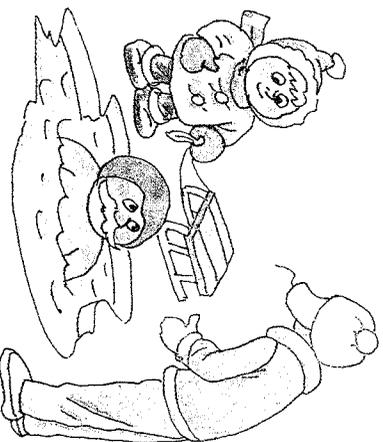
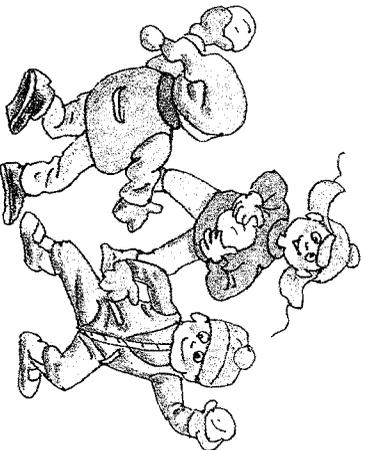
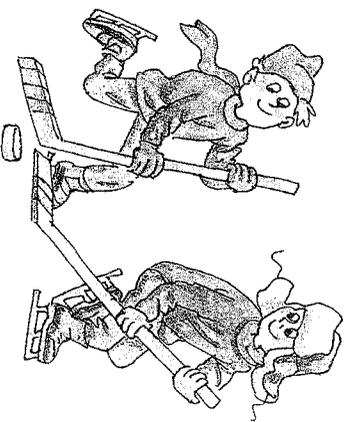
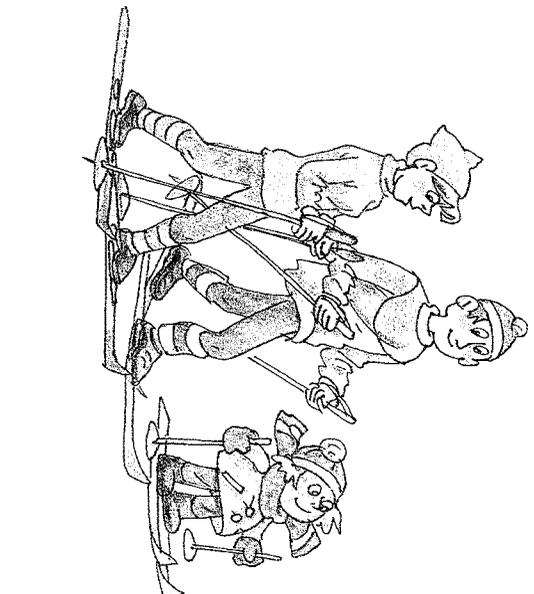
Example After ... comes ...

c) Say what you like to do in winter (summer, ...).

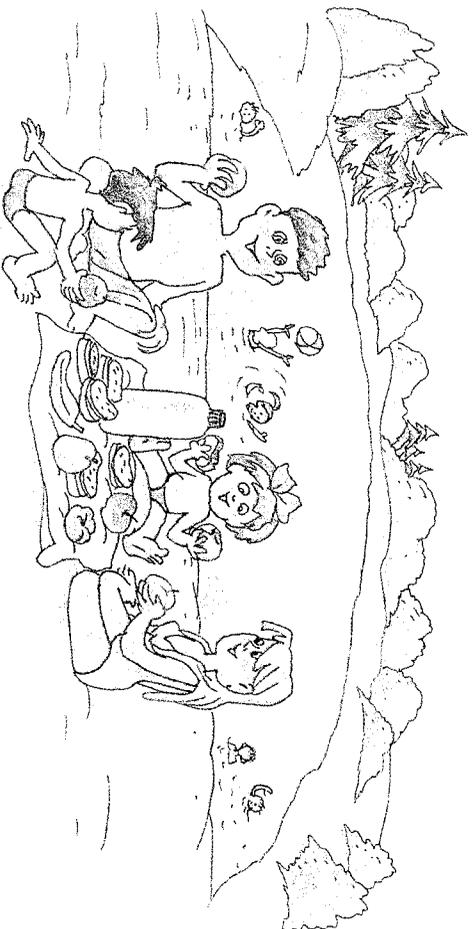
Example I like to sledge in winter.

d) Say what season you like best and why.

3 Pretend you are a teacher. Ask your classmates as many questions as you can about the pictures.



4 Play a "Champion Game". Who can say more sentences to describe the pictures?



Let Us Read and Learn



- 5 Here is a poem about seasons. Listen, read and learn it,  84.

Autumn is yellow,
Winter is white,
Spring is green,
Summer is bright.¹

- 6 English people often talk about the weather. Let's start learning how to do it,  85.

I

Mrs Smith: I say, Jim, how's the weather today?²

Mr Smith: It's terribly hot!³

Mrs Smith: Then Bob will wear a white shirt and his blue shorts today.

Mr Smith: That's right.

- ¹ bright [braɪt] — яркий
² ... how's the weather ['weðə] today? — ... какая сегодня погода?
³ hot [hɒt] — жаркий

Sandy: Hello. Could I speak to Sue, please?

Sue: This is Sue. Hello!

Sandy: Are you busy today?

Sue: No, I'm not.

Sandy: Well then, let's go to Hyde Park. The weather is so fine.

Sue: Great! See you there in 10 minutes.

Sandy: OK.



Let Us Talk _____

7 Role-play the dialogues.

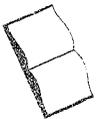
8 Think of your own dialogue and act it out.

9 There are four seasons in a year. What can you say about each of them?

Example

Summer comes after spring. Summer is green and bright. It's warmer in summer than in spring. Summer is the warmest season of the year. ...

Let Us Read _____



10 Read and say why all the Big Banana's friends liked him.



1

Look at that fellow in a yellow jacket, blue jeans, brown boots and a green cap. Do you know him? He is the Big Banana. He is from a hot country, from Africa. But now he lives in Great Britain.

He has got a big body, long arms, short

legs, small feet, little green eyes, brown hair, a big red nose and a little red mouth.

He's a nice funny fellow. And he's clever. He's very clever, much cleverer than his sister.

And he's a great worker. He works a lot. That's why he grows, and grows, and grows. That's why he is so big — the Big Banana. He works a lot and grows quickly.

The Big Banana has got a lot of friends — different fruit and vegetables — oranges, apples, lemons, pineapples,¹ pears,² grapes,³ tangerines,⁴ carrots and many other friends. They all like the Big Banana, because⁵ he is good. He's very, very good, much better than his sister.

11 Choose and read aloud the sentences to describe the Big Banana.

Let Us Write _____



12 Find in the tale the names of fruit and write them down.

Puzzle Time _____



13 Solve the puzzle.

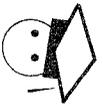
This is the season
When fruit is sweet.

This is the season
When school friends meet.⁶
What season is it?

- 1 pineapple ['paɪnæpl] — ананас
- 2 pear [peə] — груша
- 3 grapes [grɛps] — виноград
- 4 tangerine [tændʒə'ni:n] — мандарин
- 5 because [bɪ'kɒz] — потому что
- 6 meet [mi:t] — встречаться

77 The Seventy-seventh **Lesson**

Lesson Seventy-seven



Let Us Learn _____

1 Some sentences are true, some are not. Choose and read aloud those which are true.

1. In winter there is a lot of snow. 2. Summer comes after winter. 3. Autumn is the warmest season of the year. 4. Summer is warmer than spring. 5. There are five seasons in a year. 6. There is usually a lot of fruit in autumn. 7. Winter is the coldest season of the year. 8. The English celebrate New Year in summer. 9. Summer holidays are the longest. 10. People celebrate Christmas in winter. 11. It often snows in winter.

2 Try to make up as many sentences as you can.

I	like ...	
fine	my parents	likes ...
hot	my friend	don't like ...
When the weather	my brother	doesn't like ...
is	we	go ...
warm	children	goes ...
bad	people	put on ...
		puts on ...

3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words, 86.

4 Make the sentences complete.

- The first winter month is ...
- The second winter month is ...
- The third winter month is ...

5 Match the sentences. Can you explain why?

Nancy was happy	she was busy.
Mum couldn't go to the theatre with us	the water was very cold.
Phil was ill	there wasn't much snow.
My little brother didn't swim yesterday	it was his birthday.
The children couldn't sledge	I'm hungry.
Ned sent a greeting card to Bobby	he takes good care of his pet.
I'd love to have another glass of juice	I'm thirsty.
I'd like one more hamburger	he ate too much ice cream and drank cold juice.
Pam loves Mike	she got a puppy as a birthday present.

Let Us Read and Learn



6 Learn the proverb and think of Russian equivalents.

Every thing is good in its season.

7 These two poems are about winter. Read them, choose the one you like best and learn it,  87.

It's winter now, so bundle up tight!¹
Warm mittens and caps will be just right.
Ice on the lake, snow on the ground,²
Time to ski and skate all around.³
Winter, spring, summer, fall⁴ —
I like winter best of all.

-
- 1 bundle up tight ['bʌndl ʌp 'taɪt] — хорошо укутайся
 - 2 ground [graʊnd] — земля
 - 3 all around ['ɔ:l ə'raʊnd] — вокруг
 - 4 fall = autumn

When does snow blow?
 When do flowers² grow?
 Is it best to go a little slow
 When streets are covered³ with ice and snow?

Let Us Read _____

8 Read and say what you think of the Little Banana.



II

And who is that lady with long yellow hair, big blue eyes, a little white nose, a little red mouth, short arms, short legs, small hands and small feet? Her clothes are so beautiful! And she looks beautiful too!

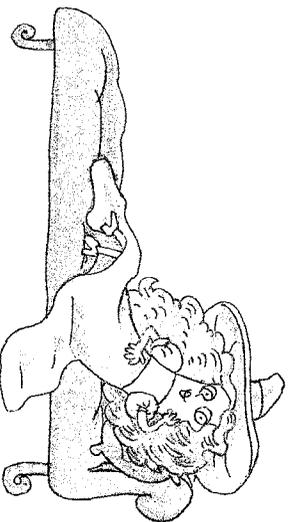
— It's the Big Banana's sister — the Little Banana.

— But why is she so little?

— Because she is lazy,⁴ she's very, very lazy. She doesn't want to work. That's why she doesn't grow. That's why she is so little — the Little Banana.

Her brother, the Big Banana, takes good care of his sister. He teaches her how to work, how to grow, how to make friends with other fruit and vegetables, but it's a slow business — she doesn't want to. She's too lazy. She doesn't care about it. The only thing she cares about is — how to look beautiful. She cares a lot only about her clothes. Look what she's wearing today — a white blouse, a long blue skirt, white shoes and a big green hat. She thinks she looks beautiful.

And what do you think?



1 blow [blaʊ] — дуть, дуть, местн

2 flower ['flaʊə] — цветок

3 are covered ['kʌvəd] — покрыты

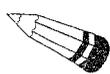
4 lazy ['leɪzi] — ленивый

Let Us Talk _____



- 9 Could you compare the Big Banana and the Little Banana?
Which of them do you like best and why?

Let Us Write _____



10 Compare.

Example hot — hotter — (the) hottest

- 1) small, warm, cold, long, short, nice, big;
- 2) bad, good;
- 3) interesting, beautiful.

11 Which words are missing? Put in and copy.

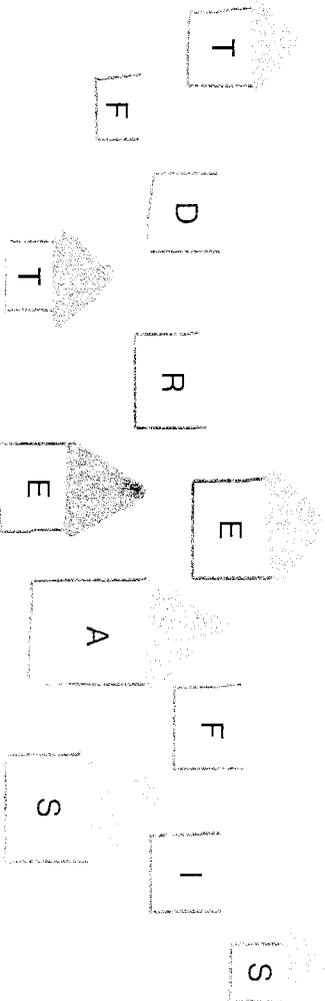
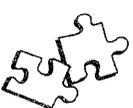
- 1) In winter the days are ... than in summer. It's ... in summer than in spring. Summer is the ... season of the year.
- 2) The dog is a ... animal. Monkeys are ... than cats. Elephants and dolphins are the ... animals.

12 Learn to write these words.

season, winter, spring, summer, autumn

Puzzle Time _____

- 13 If you put the letters in the right order you'll get a proverb that you know.



78. The Seventy-eighth Lesson

Seventy-eight

Let Us Learn _____



- 1 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  88.
- 2 You've learned the names of winter and spring months. Say what they are.

Example ... is the first (second, third) winter (spring) month.

- 3 This picture can help you speak about one of the seasons of the year.
 - What season is it?
 - How can you prove it?
 - What month do you think it is?
 - Whom can you see in the picture?
 - What are they doing?



- 4 Can you read quickly? Read all the words as quickly as you can. Then choose and read aloud only the verbs.

clean, watch, season, drink — drank, winter, buy — bought, make — made, spring, grow — grew, summer, send — sent, celebrate, autumn, open, bring — brought, come — came, weather, write — wrote, see — saw, hot, teach — taught, eat — ate, know — knew, interesting, think — thought, beautiful, go — went, invite, get — got, do — did, have — had, work, read — read, look

- 5 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

November [noʊ'vembəl], in November. — How many days are there in November? — There are thirty days in November. In Russia November is an autumn month. But in Great Britain November is the first winter month. In November it often rains and sometimes snows.

December [dɪ'sembəl], in December. My Dad's birthday is in December. — Is December an autumn month? — No, it isn't. In Russia December is the first winter month and in Great Britain December is the second winter month. On the 25th of December English people celebrate Christmas. On the 31st of December people celebrate New Year.

January [ˈdʒænjuəri], in January. The first of January is the first New Year's day. January comes after December. — Does it often snow in January? — Yes, it often snows in January. January is the third winter month in Great Britain. In January in Great Britain it snows and rains.

February [ˈfebrʊəri], in February. My birthday is on the twelfth of February. There are twenty-eight or twenty-nine days in February. In Great Britain November, December, January and February are winter months.

[b] not, hot, a lot, **because**, because I like it, because it's cold, because it's interesting. I like winter because in winter I can ski and skate. Willy, put on your warm mittens because the weather is cold.



Let Us Read and Learn

- 6 Listen, read and learn the dialogue,  89. Then choose a partner and role-play it.

Jim: Hi, Jack! This is Jim. I'm calling¹ from Africa.

Jack: From Africa? What are you doing in Africa?

Jim: I'm on holiday.

Jack: How's the weather in Africa? Is it hot?

Jim: Terribly hot.

Jack: Are you having a good time?

Jim: No, I'm not. I'm having a terrible time. The weather is terrible here.

Jack: I'm sorry to hear² that.



Let Us Talk

- 7 Now talk for Nora and Susan, using the following as a guide.

Nora: Hi, This is I'm calling from

Susan: From ... ? What are you doing in ... ?

Nora: I'm on

Susan: How's the ... in ... ? Is it ... ?

Nora:

Susan: Are you having a good time?

Nora: I'm having a ... time. The weather is ... here.

Susan: I'm ... to hear that.

- 8 Pretend you are on holiday in another country. Call your friend and talk about the weather in the country you are in.

¹ to call [kɔ:l] = to telephone

² to hear [hɪə] — слышать

Let Us Read

9 Read and say what new information you've learned.

I

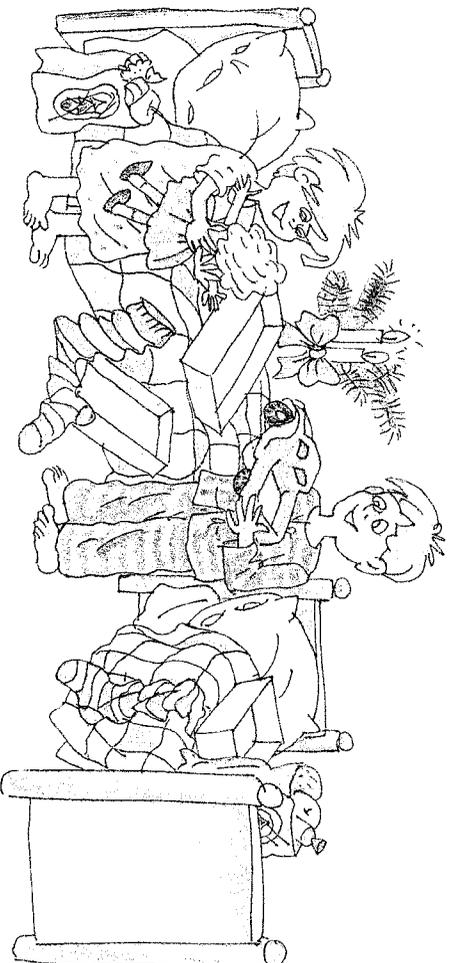
There are four seasons in the year: spring, summer, autumn and winter. The winter months in Great Britain are November, December, January and February. The winter months are cold. In Great Britain in winter it snows and rains.

Let's read about the winter months. There is something in each month.

November. There are 30 days in November. In Great Britain November is the first winter month.

In November in America there is a great holiday — Thanksgiving Day.¹ Families come together² for the day. They decorate the houses with autumn's fruit and flowers and eat traditional³ American food: roast turkey⁴ and pumpkin pie.⁵

December. There are 31 days in December. On the 25th of December there is the greatest holiday of all in England — Christmas



1 Thanksgiving Day [ˌθæŋksˈɡɪvɪŋ ˈdeɪ] — День благодарения

2 together [təˈgeðə] — вместе

3 traditional [trəˈdɪʃənəl] — традиционный

4 roast turkey [ˈrəʊst ˈtɜːki] — жареная индейка

5 pumpkin pie [ˈpʌm(p)kɪn ˈpaɪ] — тыквенный пирог

or X-mas. People give each other presents and send Christmas cards. Presents for children are in their stockings.

The traditional English dinner on Christmas Day is roast turkey and Christmas pudding.

The Queen's speech¹ is on television at 3.00 p.m.

During Christmas in Trafalgar Square there is a Christmas tree.

Not all English people celebrate New Year. Those who do celebrate it on the 31st of December. Some people have a New Year party. The party usually begins at eight o'clock in the evening. At twelve o'clock they have a toast to the New Year. The party goes on till² early³ morning.

Let Us Write _____



10 Write out all the verbs in two forms (see Exercise 4).

11 These are the answers. What are the questions?

- There are four seasons in a year.
- The winter months are: December, January, February.
- Yes, it's cold in winter.
- Yes, it often snows in winter.
- People wear warm clothes because it's cold in winter.

12 Learn to write these words.

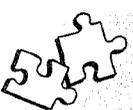
November, December, January, February, because

¹ Queen's speech ['kwɪnɪz 'spi:tʃ] — речь королевы

² till [tɪl] — до

³ early ['ɜ:li] — ранний

Puzzle Time



13 Find 11 words.

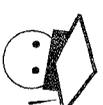
N	F	e	b	r	u	a	r	y	o	w	g
o	u	w	k	l	s	n	p	z	p	i	k
v	b	J	a	n	u	a	r	y	c	n	t
e	l	f	c	d	m	o	w	p	s	t	s
m	a	u	t	u	m	n	l	a	u	e	a
b	j	k	u	w	e	a	t	h	e	r	a
e	y	m	s	p	r	i	n	g	q	b	s
r	o	p	b	e	c	a	u	s	e	d	o
D	e	c	e	m	b	e	r	y	f	i	n

79 The Seventy-ninth Lesson

Seventy-nine



Let Us Learn



?

+

-

Is there *any* water in the glass?

Yes, there is (*some*).
(Yes,) there is *some* water in the glass.

No, there isn't
(No,) there is no water in the glass.
There isn't *any* water in the glass.

Are there *any* apples on the table?

Yes, there are *some* apples on the table.

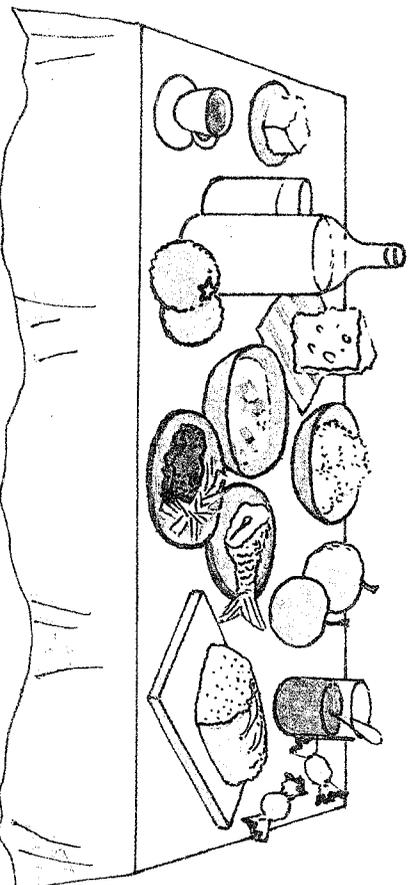
No, there aren't
No, there are no apples on the table.
No, there aren't *any* apples on the table.

1 Look at the picture and complete the sentences.

Examples

There is some There is no

There are some There are no



- 2** Play a “Memory Game”. Look at the picture for a minute (see Exercise 1), then close it and ask your classmates questions. Let your classmates answer your questions.

Examples

Is there any ... ?

Are there any ... ?

- 3** Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  90.
- 4** Learn to read the new words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[ɑ:] party, arm, **March**, in March, in March, the 8th of March. My Mother’s birthday is on the 15th of March. March is the first spring month. — What month comes before March? — February does.

[eɪ] say, day, **April**, in April, the first of April, on the first of April.
— Is your sister’s birthday in March or in April? — Her birthday is on the fifth of April. April is the second spring month.

[ɑ:] glass, **grass**, green grass, long grass. In spring the grass is green.
— What animals eat grass? — Horses, sheep and cows do. They like to eat grass.

[i:] eat, meat, clean, leaf, **a leaf** — leaves, green leaves, small leaves.
In spring the leaves on the trees are small and green. Trees with their small green leaves look beautiful in spring.

Let Us Read and Learn



- 5 Listen, read and learn,  91.

Spring is here,
Summer is near,
Grass is green,
So nice and clean.
Winter, spring, summer, fall —
I like spring best of all.

Let Us Talk



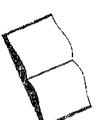
- 6 Are you a good listener? Let us see. Play the game "A Snowball Story". Say whatever you can about spring in Great Britain.

Examples

- *There are two spring months in Great Britain.*
- *There are two spring months in Great Britain. They are March, April.*
- *There are two spring months in Great Britain. They are March and April. March is the first spring month. ...*

- 7 Now let's see what you can say about winter. Each of you says a sentence. Then one of you will sum it up.

Let Us Read



- 8 Read and say what English traditions you've learned about.

II

January. There are 31 days in January. It's fun to see the New Year in. There is a lot of dancing, I eating and drinking.

I dancing ['da:nsɪŋ] — танцы

There is an interesting New Year tradition: in Scotland¹ you can go “first footing”. That is — you visit friends, so you are the “first foot” of the New Year in their houses. In Scotland the first visitor who comes into a house on New Year’s morning is “the First Foot”.

The Scots² believe³ that the First Foot brings luck⁴ to the family for the New Year.

In Scotland the First Foot must be a man (or a boy), not a woman! And he must have dark hair.



February. There are twenty-eight or twenty-nine days in February. The 14th of February is St Valentine's Day.⁵

People buy or make Valentine cards and send them to people they love. They don't sign⁶ their cards — you must guess who sent the cards to you.

¹ Scotland ['skɒtlənd] — Шотландия

² the Scots — шотландцы

³ believe [br'i:v] — верить

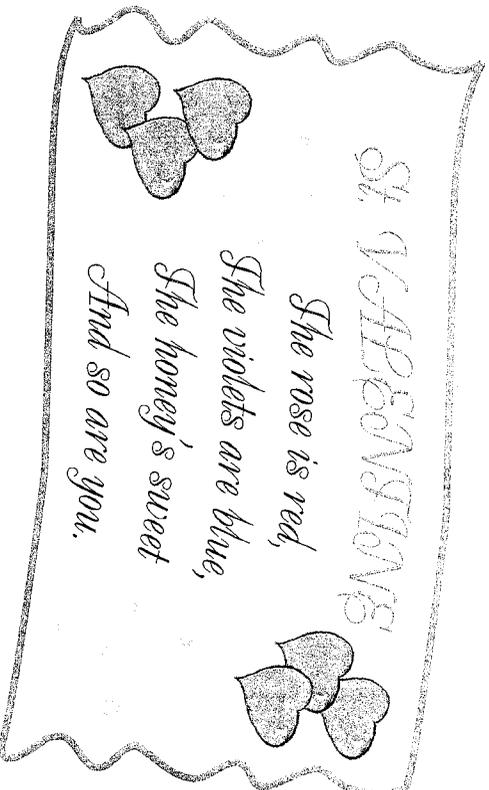
⁴ luck [lʌk] — удача

⁵ St Valentine's [snt'veləntaɪnz] Day — день св. Валентина

⁶ sign [saɪn] — подписывать

Boys and girls, husbands and wives, relatives and friends send cards to each other.

There are different cards to suit all tastes.



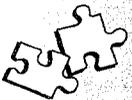
Let Us Write _____



9 Write 6 sentences (see Exercises 1, 2).

10 Learn to write these words.

March, April, grass, leaf (leaves)



Puzzle Time _____

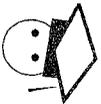
11 Put in the right letters to write 12 words.

F					I							
D					M		r					
g				s			w		s			a
s					r		e					
J							y		I			
				A								
	y											
N							r		g			n

80 The Eightieth Lesson Eighty

81 The Eighty-first Lesson Eighty-one

Let Us Learn _____



- 1 You are a magician! Your bag is full of different toys. The children want to know what toys are in your bag. What questions do they ask you?



Example

A: Are there any giraffes in your bag?

Magician: Yes, there are. (No, there aren't.)

- 2 And now play a "Memory Game". Who remembers what there is in the magician bag?

Example

There are some ... in the bag.

- 3 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[eɪ] say, day, **May**, in May. — Is it warm in May? — Sometimes it's warm in May, sometimes it isn't. In Great Britain May is the first summer month.

[u:] too, tooth, school, pupil, blue, **June**, in June. — How many days are there in June? — There are 30 days in June. June is the first summer month. — How's the weather in June? — It's usually warm in June.

[aɪ] write, eye, tights, right, time, buy, try, my, **July**, in July. — How many days are there in July? — There are 31 days in July. July is the second summer month in our country. It's warmer in July than in June. My granny's birthday is on the twenty-first of July.

- 4 Say what month comes:

after: November, December, May, March, June, February;
before: January, April, February, July, March, May.

- 5 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  92.

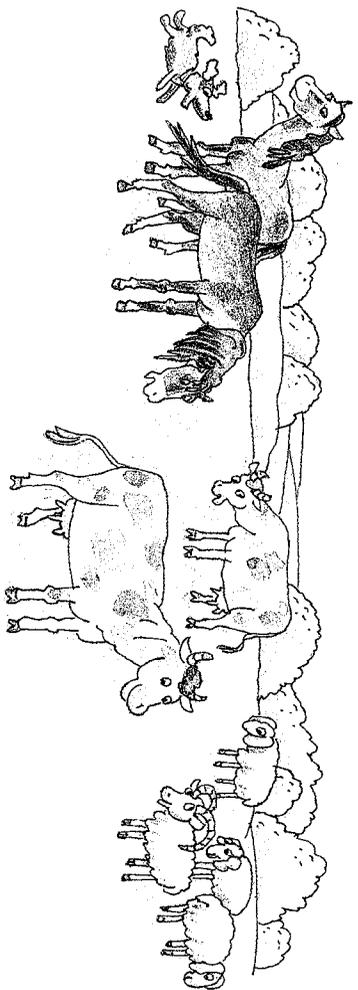
- 6 Whom can you see in the pictures on page 108? Look and say.

Examples

There are some cows in the ...

There is no pig in the ...

There are no tigers in the ...



Let Us Read and Learn



7 Listen, read and learn,  93.

The summer sun¹ shines² hot and high.
Baby birds now learn to fly.
Green, green leaves and tasty fruit,
All the things are so good!
Winter, spring, summer, fall,
I like summer best of all.

¹ the sun [sʌn] — солнце

² shine [ʃaɪn] — светить, сиять



94.

- 8 Enjoy your English. Listen to the song, read and learn it,

When trees are green and forests are green,
And grass is green and long,
It's good to walk in the forest
And listen to little birds' song.

When trees are white and forests are white,
Because they are covered with snow,
It's good to be out-of-doors¹ and play,
Oh, I love it so!

Let Us Read _____



- 9 In Great Britain spring months are full of holidays. What are they?

III

In Great Britain there are two spring months: March and April.

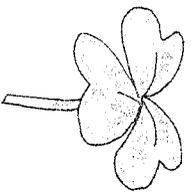
March. There are 31 days in March. In England spring begins at the end of March. The 17th of March is a national² holiday in Ireland³ — St [snt] Patrick's Day. People send greeting cards. On that day people wear a shamrock [ʃæmrɒk]. A shamrock is a plant with three leaves. It is the national emblem [ˈembəlɪ] of Ireland.

In March there is also a holiday for English women — Mother's Day. People in the family try to make it a day off for Mother and help her in any way they can. On that day they visit their mothers and give them some presents. If they can't do that, they send their mothers "A Mother's Day Card".

¹ out-of-doors [ˌaʊtəvˈdɔːz] — на свежем воздухе

² national [ˈnæʃnəl] — национальный

³ Ireland [ˈaɪələnd] — Ирландия



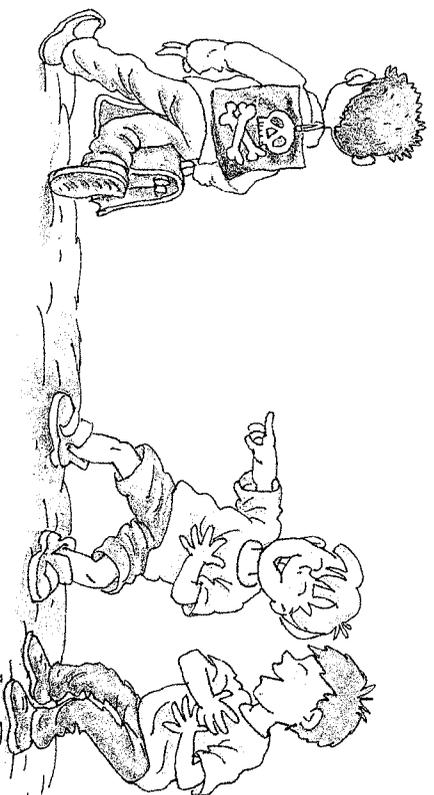
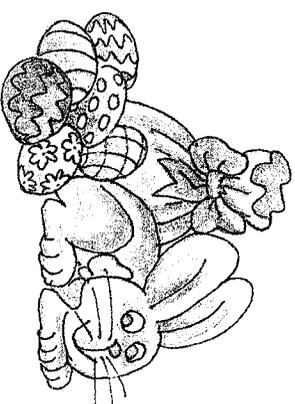
April. April is the second spring month. There are 30 days in April. In April or at the end of March English people celebrate Easter¹ Day. They celebrate it as the start of spring or a religious² festival. In England it is time to give and to get presents.

shamrock
On Easter Sunday children get chocolate Easter eggs or rabbits. You can buy them at any sweet shop in the weeks before Easter.

The Easter holidays are at the end of March and in the first half³ of April. Pupils go back to school after Easter.

In April there is a day for fun – April Fool's Day. It's on the first of April. English children like this day very much.

They play jokes⁴ and tricks on other people: other children, parents, friends, relatives, school teachers. One is to tell someone that something is wrong with his dress when in fact⁵ all is in order.⁶



-
- 1 Easter [ˈi:stə] — Пасха
 - 2 religious [rɪˈlɪdʒəs] — религиозный
 - 3 half [ha:f] — половина
 - 4 joke [dʒəʊk] — шутка
 - 5 in fact [ɪn ˈfækt] — фактически
 - 6 in order [ɪn ˈɔ:də] — в порядке

"Oh, Ted, look, your right shoe is on your left foot!" When the boy looks at his feet and sees that he has got the right shoe on the right foot, the one, who is playing the joke, says, "April Fool!" So children play different jokes and tricks.

As you see the first of April is a day for fun.

Let Us Talk _____



- 10 Say what English holidays you remember. Which of them do you like best and why?

Let Us Write _____



- 11 Change the words underlined to describe spring.

There are four winter months in Great Britain. They are November, December, January and February. November is the first winter month. In winter the days are short and the nights are long. It's usually cold in winter. In December English people celebrate Christmas.

- 12 Learn to write these words.

May, June, July, some, any

Puzzle Time _____



- 13 What does the message say? (The key to the code see Lesson 53, "Puzzle Time".)

1325 61221521189205 1951191514 919 19211313518

82 The Eighty-second Lesson

Lesson Eighty-two

Let Us Learn



?

any + thing = anything
Is there anything in
the bag?

+

some + thing = something
(Yes,) there is something
in the bag.

-

no + thing = nothing
(No,) there is nothing
in the bag.
(No,) there isn't
anything in the bag.

1 Complete the dialogues:

I

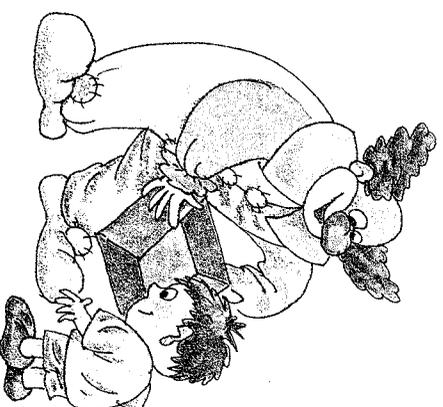
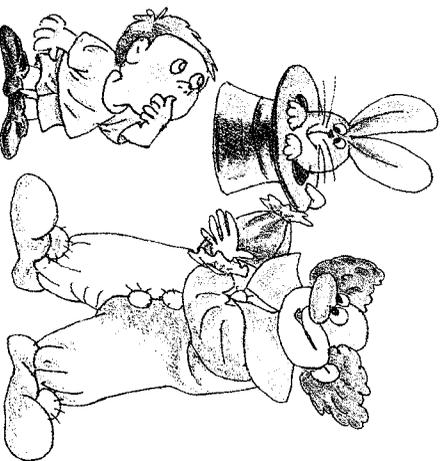
Boy: Is there ... in your hat?

Clown: Yes, there is ... in my hat.

II

Boy: Is there ... in your box?

Clown: No, there isn't ... in my box.



2 Disagree.

Examples

- Pam wanted to say something to Pete.
- No, Pam didn't want to say anything to Pete.
- Pam wanted to say nothing to Pete.

They put something into the bag.
Mary took something from the table.
There was something in the box.

3 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[b] box, what, watch, from, sorry, **forest**, a forest — forests, in the forest. The forests are green in summer. It's nice to walk in the forest! I think that forests look beautiful in all the seasons.

[i:] eat, see, tree, **field**, a field — fields, in the field. Grasshoppers live in the fields. Look! How beautiful the field is!

[ɔ:] bought, brought, autumn, **August**, in August. There are 31 days in August. May, June, July and August are summer months in Great Britain. — Which is your favourite summer month? — August is.

[e] seven, clever, eleven, **September**, in September. September is the first autumn month. There are 30 days in September. — Does school start in September? — Yes, it does.

[əʊ] so, know, grow, those, **October**, in October. October comes after September. — Is it colder in October than in September? — It certainly is. In Great Britain there are two autumn months — September and October.

4 Choose and read the names of winter, spring, summer, autumn months in Great Britain.

October, January, December, June, September, May, July, April, August, November, March, February

Let Us Read and Learn

- 5 Listen, read and learn,  95.

Put on your jacket and jeans for fall,
Now it's cold to play football!
Leaves turn¹ orange, red and brown,
And they all are falling down.
Winter, spring, summer, fall,
I like fall best of all!

Let Us Read

- 6 Read and say what you have learned about summer and autumn months in Great Britain.

THE SEASONS YEAR

IV

May, June, July, August. In Great Britain summer begins in May. So there are four summer months. They are May, June, July and August. The weather is usually warm but not always. It is often changeable. The days are long and the nights are short. When the sun is high in the sky² it is hot.

People wear light³ clothes — cotton⁴ shirts, jeans, skirts, T-shirts and light shoes.

In May on the first Monday⁵ English people celebrate the May Day holiday. Big shops are open and some people go shopping.

In June the English people celebrate Father's Day. On that day children send cards and give presents to their fathers.

- 1 turn [tɜ:n] — зд. становятся
2 sky [skaɪ] — небо
3 light [laɪt] — лёгкий
4 cotton ['kɒtn] — хлопок
5 Monday ['mʌndɪ] — понедельник

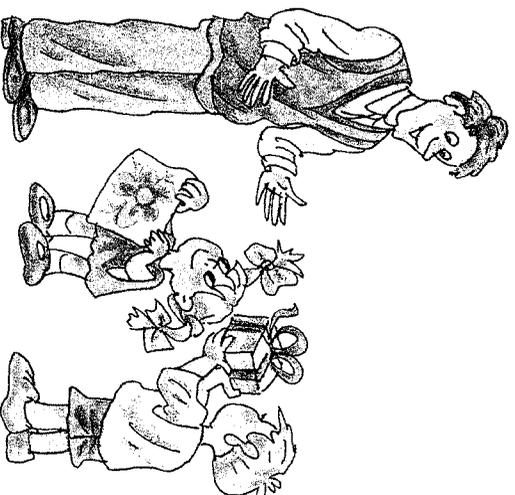
Most people stay in Britain in the summer. In July and August there are lots of things to do: you can go to the parks, to the swimming pools, to the stadiums.

If the weather is fine, there are a lot of people on the beaches.¹ In July and August you can have a very good time.

September, October. Autumn comes in September. Autumn is usually a nice season in England. It is warm and dry.² But it can rain a lot too.

Summer holidays are over in September. The parks, beaches and streets of Britain are very quiet.³ It is time to go back to school. In Great Britain school begins in the second week of September.

On the 31st of October in Great Britain there is a nice holiday for children — Halloween. People put pumpkins on the windowsills.⁴ They draw⁵ eyes, noses and mouths on the pumpkins and put candles into them. So the pumpkin looks like a face.



- 1 beach [bi:tʃ] — пляж
- 2 dry [draɪ] — сухой
- 3 quiet ['kwaɪət] — безлюдный
- 4 windowsill ['wɪndəʊsɪl] — подоконник
- 5 draw [draɪ:] — рисовать

Children dress up in funny clothes. They go from house to house and say "Trick or treat".¹ People give them sweets, fruit, cakes, cookies or money.²

This is a nice, funny and "tasty" holiday, isn't it?

Let Us Talk _____



7 You've read about the English Year. Let's talk about it.

1. How many seasons are there in a year? What are they?
2. What are the spring months in Great Britain and in our country?
3. How many winter months are there in Great Britain? Name them, please.
4. There are three winter months in our country, aren't there? What are they?
5. When does summer begin in Great Britain and in our country?
6. What are the autumn months in Great Britain? And how many autumn months are there in our country?
7. What holidays do English people celebrate: in December, in January, in February, in March, in April, in June, in October?
8. What holidays do we celebrate in our country?
9. When does school begin in Great Britain and in our country?

Let Us Write _____



- 8** What do you think is the most interesting holiday in Great Britain? What can you write about it?
- 9** Do Exercises 1 and 2 in writing.
- 10** Learn to write these words.

forest, field, August, September, October, something,
anything, nothing

¹ trick or treat [ˈtrɪk ə ˈtri:t] — угощайте, а то подшутим над вами
² money [ˈmʌni] — деньги

Puzzle Time _____

- 11 Write the message and answer the question.

Do English people celebrate Halloween?

83. The Eighty-third LESSON

Eighty-three

Let Us Learn _____



?

any + body = anybody
Is there anybody in
that house?

+

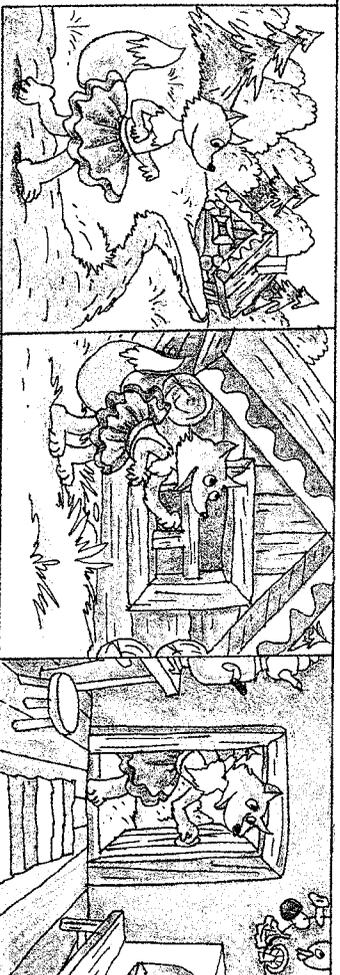
some + body = somebody
(Yes,) there is somebody
in that house.

-

no + body = nobody
(No,) there is no-
body in that house.
(No,) there isn't
anybody in that
house.

- 1 What does the fox say?

- a) There is ... in the house.
b) Is there ... in the house?
c) There is ... in the house.



2 a) Make up sentences.

	is		in the field.
There	was		in the forest.
	will be	somebody	in the house.
			at the stadium.
			in the swimming pool.
			at the sports ground.
			at school.
			at home.

b) Express your doubt.

Example *Is there anybody ...?*

c) Disagree.

Examples *There is nobody*

There isn't anybody

3 Put the right words in gaps.

- 1) Yesterday Mum bought ... for me, but I don't know what it is.
- 2) It was night and he couldn't see
- 3) He saw ... because it was night.
- 4) There are ... books on the table, but I don't know how many.
- 5) Were there ... toys in the box? – Yes, there were
- 6) Did you see ... in the field? – No, I saw ... there.
- 7) The boy didn't ask ... to help him make a chair.
- 8) ... came into the house.
- 9) There was ... bread on the table and I asked Mum to give me
- 10) Is there ... coffee in the cup? – No, there isn't. There is ... milk in it.

Let Us Read and Learn



- 4 Listen to the song, read and learn,  96.

1

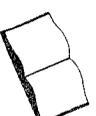
In the North² it's snowing,
And in the South³ it's hot.
In the East the wind is blowing,
And in the West it's not.

In the South the sun is shining,
And in the West the sky is blue.
In the East it's raining,
And in the North it's raining too.

- 5 Read and learn the proverb, give the Russian equivalent.

A tree is known⁴ by its fruit.

Let Us Read _____



- 6 Read the dialogue and say what seasons Tom and Ted like and why.

Tom: Do you like autumn, Ted?

Ted: No, I don't. I think it's a dull⁵ season. The grass is yellow. The leaves fall down from the trees. It often rains. It's often cold. No, I don't like autumn. But I do like winter and summer.

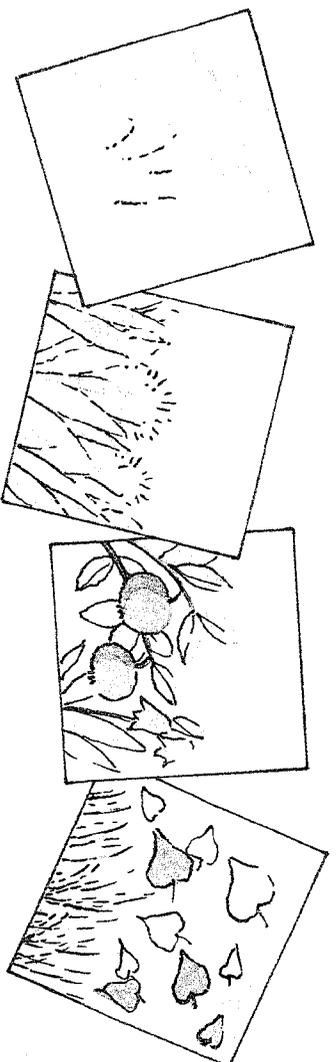
1 world [wɜ:ld] — мир, вселенная

2 North [nɔ:θ] — север

3 South [saʊθ] — юг

4 known [nəʊn] — узнаваемый

5 dull [dʌl] — грустный



Tom: Do you?

Ted: Yes, I do, because in summer the days are longer and warmer and the nights are shorter. And we do not go to school! You can have a lot of fun in summer!

Tom: And why do you like winter, I wonder?

Ted: Oh, in winter you can have a very good time too. You can enjoy¹ skating, skiing, playing snowballs and sledging. Winter is the time for fun! I think that winter is a beautiful season. Forests and fields are white with snow. They look wonderful in winter!

Tom: Well, but I like autumn. I think that forests are more beautiful in autumn than in winter – the leaves in the trees are of different colours – green, yellow, orange, red and brown. They look beautiful! And autumn is a “tasty” season – there are a lot of vegetables and fruit in autumn.

Ted: And what about spring? Do you like it?

Tom: Oh, yes, I like it very much, too. The leaves are small and green. The grass is green, too. It's warm in spring. In spring I usually enjoy the sun because it is not very hot. Well, I think all the seasons are beautiful!

Let Us Talk _____

7 What is your favourite season and why?

1 enjoy [ɪn'dʒɔɪ] – получать удовольствие, наслаждаться

Let Us Write

8 Write any six sentences (see Exercise 2 a, b, c).

9 Learn to write these words.

somebody, anybody, nobody

Puzzle Time

10 Complete the crossword. Write the names of months.

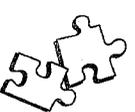
4 8
6
5
2
10
9
1

S e p t e m b e r

7
3

84 The Eighty-fourth Lesson Eighty-four

85 The Eighty-fifth Lesson Eighty-five



86. The Eighty-sixth **Lesson**

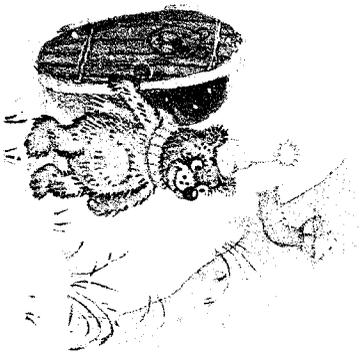
Eighty-six

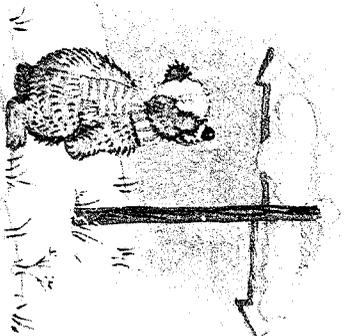
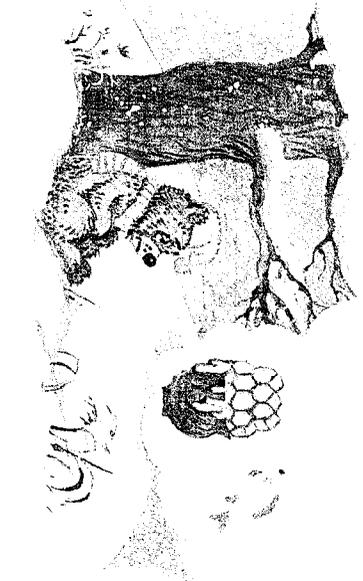
Review 5

Let Us Talk _____



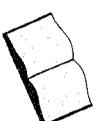
- ① Do you know the names of the months of the English year? Name:
 - the winter months;
 - the spring months;
 - the summer months;
 - the autumn months.
- ② Let's have some fun. Now try and name all the months in an alphabetical order.
- ③ Play a game "Nature Lover". The winner is the one who can say more about each season.
- ④ Describe any month of the English year you want for your classmates to guess what month it is. (Don't forget about the holidays!)
- ⑤ You've learned about some English holidays:
 - a) talk about the one that you think is the most interesting;
 - b) let your classmates ask you questions for more information;
 - c) ask your classmates questions about other holidays of the English year.
- ⑥ Think of your own story on the pictures. Let your classmates think of a title for your story.





- 7 You've learned 6 poems and 2 songs (Lessons 79–85). Recite the poem and sing the song you like best.

Let Us Read _____



- 8 Right or wrong? Choose and read aloud what's right.
- There are twelve months in a year.
In Great Britain there are three summer months.
There are 30 days in June.
June comes after August.
In Great Britain May is the first summer month.
There are twenty-eight days in January.
There are twenty-eight or twenty-nine days in February.
There are two seasons in Great Britain.
Winter is the coldest season of the year.
In winter in Great Britain it rains and snows.

People celebrate Christmas on the 23rd of December.
Halloween is on the 31st of October.

9 Read and say why Londoners like to go to the parks.

London is a very big city.¹ More than eight million people live in London.

London is a green city. There are a lot of parks in London. The biggest parks are: Hyde [hard] Park, St James's Park and Regent's [ˈrɪdʒənts] Park.

London's famous² Zoo is in Regent's Park. In the Zoo there are animals and birds from different countries and continents [ˈkɒntnənts]. There you can see crocodiles and monkeys, elephants and giraffes, lions and tigers and a lot of other animals. You can give bananas to the monkeys! The English enjoy visiting the Zoo.

In English parks you can do lots of things and have a very good time: you can sit on the green grass, you can play football and other games, ride horses, watch ducks, you can walk or have a quiet talk with your friends or read your book. Londoners love their parks!

10 Are the sentences true or false?

There are ten big parks in London.

London's famous Zoo is in St James's Park.

There are different animals and birds from different countries and continents in London's Zoo.

You can play games in the parks in London.

Londoners don't like their parks.

You can give bananas to the monkeys in the Zoo.

¹ city [ˈsɪtɪ] — большой город

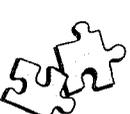
² famous [ˈfeɪməs] — известный

Let Us Write _____

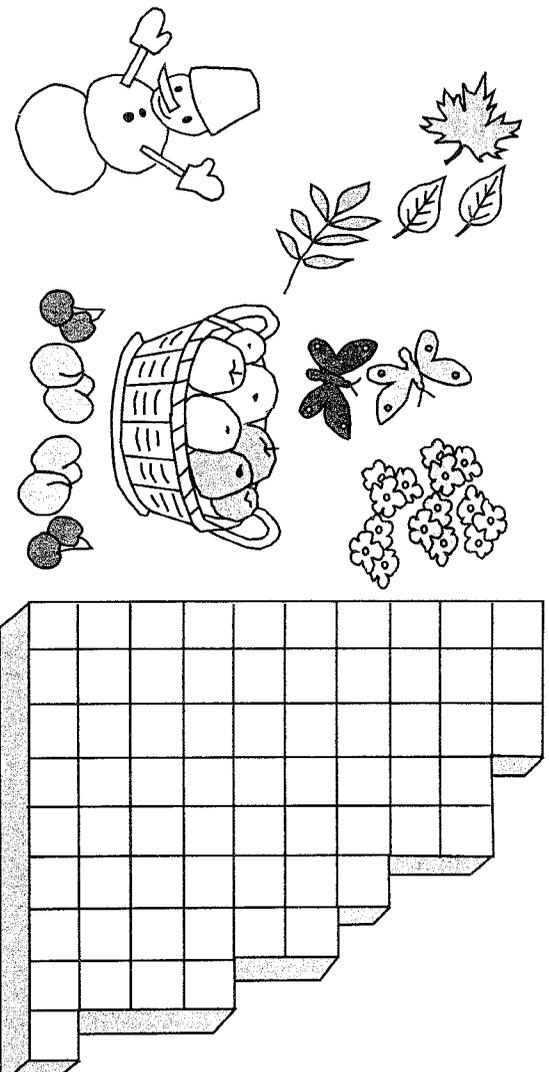


- 11 You've thought of a story on the pictures (see Exercise 6). If it's a good story, write it down. If it's not – think of another one.

Puzzle Time _____



- 12 Which names of 10 months do you need to build up the "lander"?



87 The Eighty-seventh Lesson
Lesson Eighty-seven

Text "Halloween"

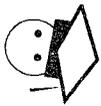
88 The Eighty-eighth Lesson
Lesson Eighty-eight

Text "Trick or Treat"

89 The Eighty-ninth Lesson

Lesson Eighty-nine

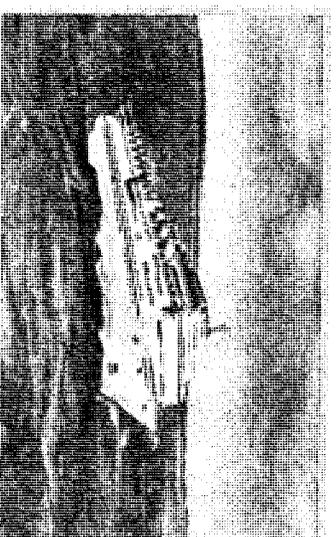
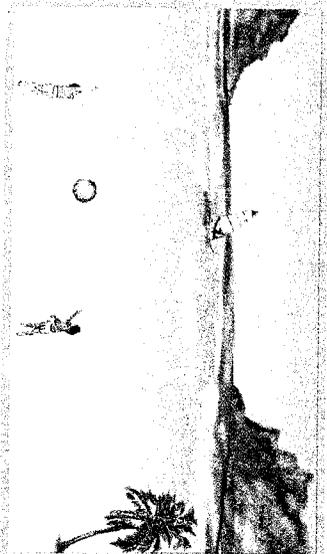
Let Us Learn



1 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  98.

2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions:

- What can you see in the pictures?
- Where do you like to spend your holidays?
- Where does your friend like to spend his (her) holidays?
- Where were you last summer?
- Where will your family go next summer and why?



3 Make the sentences complete.

1. Do you like to swim in the ... or in the ...? 2. I like to swim in the The water in the Black ... is warm in summer. 3. He knows the names of the four 4. Last summer the Browns lived near the 5. Will you go to the ... next summer?

Let Us Read and Learn



4 Listen, read and learn,  99. Then act it out.

Jack: Hello, Mike! Did you have a good holiday?

Mike: Yes, thanks. Did you?

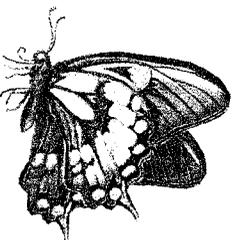
Jack: Yes, lovely.¹

Mike: Ah, well. Back to school now. Ready² for work?

5 Listen, read and learn,  100.

*БУТТЕРФЛАЙ*³

Butterfly, butterfly,
Where do you fly,
So quickly and high,
In the blue, blue sky?



Let Us Read



6 Read and say how Bob took care of the animals.

ОН А ЗАРМ

Bob is a little boy. He is seven. He lives in a town.⁴ His uncle Mr Smith lives in the country.⁵ He has got a big farm. Mr Smith invited Bob to spend his summer holidays with him on the farm.

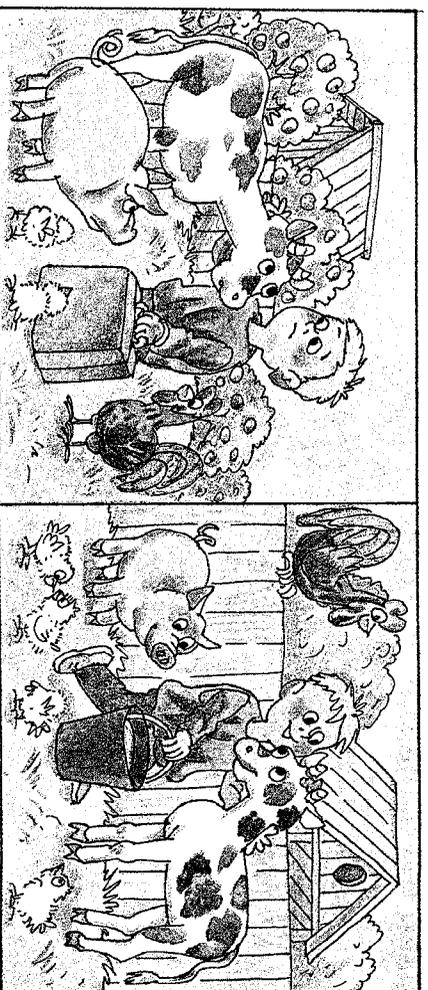
¹ lovely [ˈlʌvli] — великодушный, предстный

² ready [ˈredi] — готовый

³ butterfly [ˈbʌtəflaɪ] — бабочка

⁴ in a town [ɪn ə ˈtaʊn] — в городе

⁵ in the country [ɪn ðə ˈkʌntri] — в деревне, за городом



For the first time in his life Bob saw so many domestic animals: horses, cows, sheep, pigs, ducks, hens, chickens and some others.

He wanted to see everything. Bob's uncle had a lot of work to do on his farm. He usually got up at five o'clock in the morning. Bob wanted to help his uncle in his work.

One day Mr Smith asked Bob to take care of a little calf.¹ Bob was happy. The calf was so nice, it was very little and funny. It had long legs. Its eyes were big and brown. They were so beautiful!

Bob gave the calf some milk to drink and some bread and other things to eat. He took him for a walk in the morning and in the afternoon. Bob took good care of the calf and the calf grew very quickly. Bob liked the calf very much. And the calf liked him too. It always went with Bob wherever² Bob went. Soon they became³ very good friends.

Bob learned to take care of the other animals on the farm, too. When it was time to go back to town, Bob was very sorry. He went with his uncle to see all the animals and to say goodbye to them. He was sure that the animals were sorry too and that they said goodbye to him in their animal language.⁴

7 Choose and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the pictures.

¹ calf [kɑ:f] — телёнок

² wherever [weə'veə] — куда бы ни

³ became [br'keɪm] — стали, сделались

⁴ language ['læŋgwɪdʒ] — язык

Let Us Talk

- 8 Choose a partner and talk about your last summer holidays.
- 9 Tell your classmates about your plans for your summer holidays.



Let Us Write

- 10 Make the sentences complete.



1) In winter the days are ... than in summer. 2) It's ... in summer than in spring. 3) Summer is the ... season of the year. 4) ... is the coldest season of the year. 5) In ... the ... fall down from the ... 6) I think it's ... in the forest in autumn. 7) It's warm in ... and in ...

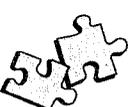
- 11 Write the opposites.

Example

close — open

large, in the morning, wrong, summer, night, cold

Puzzle Time



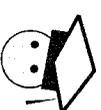
- 12 Read the secret message and answer the question.

Ho wmanyoce ansd rethercont hearth?

90 The Ninetieth LESSON

Ninety

Let Us Learn



- 1 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[1] kitten, winter, visit, river, a river — rivers, a long river. There is a long river near our country house. — On what river does London stand? — London stands on the river Thames [temz].

English people often call this river "Father Thames". And Russian people call the Volga river "Matushka-Volga". — Do you like to swim in the river or in the lake? — I like to swim in the river. [i:] season, eat, meat, **sea**, a sea — seas, the Black Sea, the White Sea. In summer we usually go to the Black Sea. When we lived near the sea I learned to swim. The water in the Black Sea is usually warm in summer.

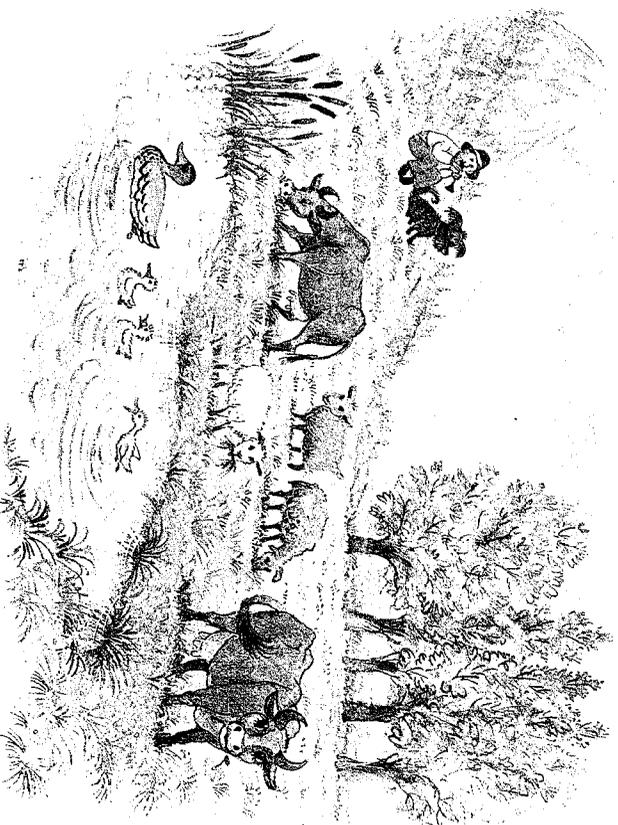
ocean ['oʊʃn], an ocean — oceans, four oceans. — Do you know the names of all the oceans? — Yes, I know the names of the four oceans.

2 Say where they went for their last summer holiday.

The Browns	was	near	in the river.
Helen	were	to	the lake.
My uncle	went	in	the Black Sea.
Our family			the ocean.
My friend's family			South America.
			London.

3 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  101.

4 Look at the picture and answer the questions:



- What can you see in the picture?
What is there near the lake?
What is there near the field?
Whom can you see in the field?
What are the cows and the sheep doing?
What is the dog doing?
What colour are the sheep (the cows, the ducks, the dog)?
What season is it? Why do you think so?
- 5 Now you ask your classmates questions on the picture. Let them answer your questions.**

Let Us Read and Learn _____

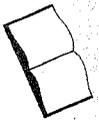


- 6 Enjoy your English. Listen, read, learn and sing the song, 102.**



Little cabin in the wood.
Little man by the window stood.
Little rabbit hopping by,
Knocking³ at the door.⁴
“Help me, help me, sir!” he said.
“For the farmer bobs⁵ my head.”
“Come on in,” the little man said,
“Warm up by the fire.”⁶

- 1 cabin [ˈkæbɪn] — хижина
2 wood = forest
3 knock [nɒk] — стучать
4 door [dɔː] — дверь
5 bob [bɒb] — зó. оторвать
6 fire [ˈfaɪə] — огонь



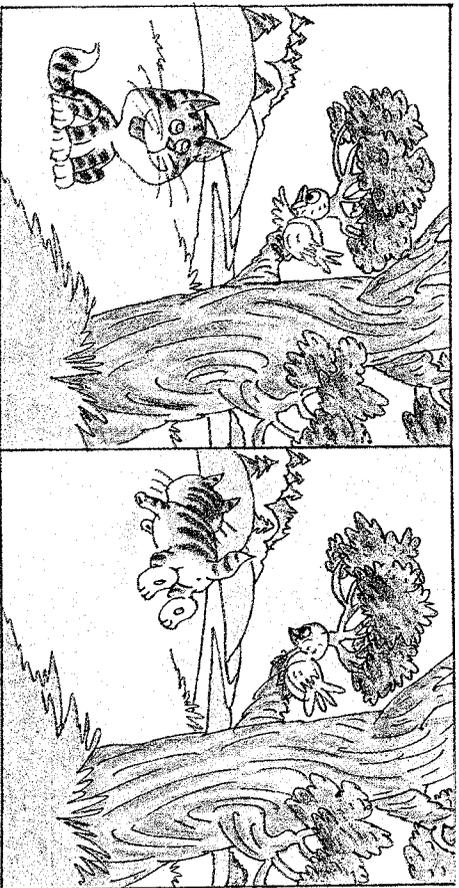
Let Us Read

7 Read the tale and prove that the bird is clever.

It was a fine spring day. A little bird sat in a tree singing a song. A big grey cat saw the bird. He wanted to eat it.

So he came up to the tree and said, "Good morning, dear! Come down from the tree! Come here! I want to say something to you." "Say what you want. I shall not come down," said the bird. "Do you know that all the animals and birds are good friends now? I like you very much. Come down. We shall play," said the cat. "No, thank you," said the clever bird. "I like it here, high up in the tree. From here I can see green fields and forests, beautiful lakes and rivers. Now I see a lot of dogs. They are running here."

"Oh, goodbye then. I must run away now."
"Why?" said the little bird. "Don't you know that all the animals are good friends now?"



Let Us Talk

- 8 Describe the pictures (see Exercise 7).
- 9 The tale is interesting, isn't it? Tell it at home.
- 10 Do you know any tales about clever animals? Tell one of them to your classmates.



Let Us Write _____



11 Make up sentences (see Exercise 2). Write them down.

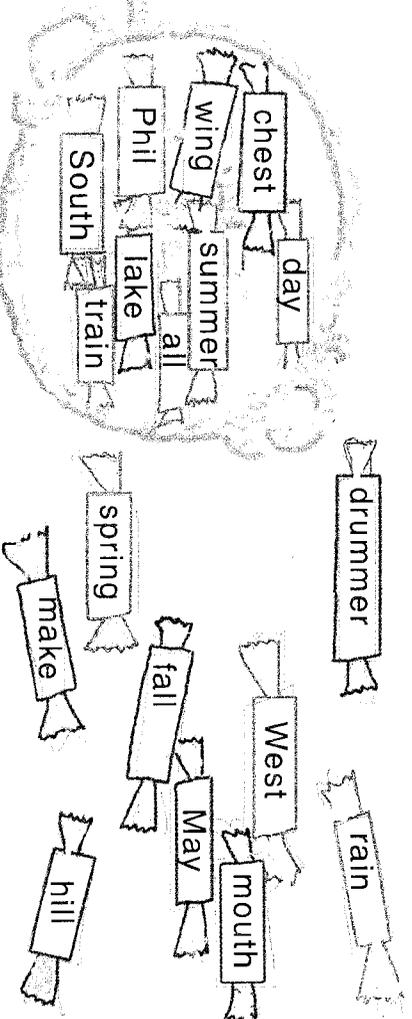
12 Learn to write these words.

river, sea, ocean

Puzzle Time _____



13 Find the rhyming twins.



9] The Ninety-first LESSON

9], LESSON Ninety-one

Let Us Learn _____



1 Learn to read the words and sentences: first read them to yourself, then aloud as quickly as you can.

[3:] girl, bird, third, **earth**, the earth. The earth is very, very big. On the earth. People live on the earth. — How many oceans are there on the earth? — There are four oceans on the earth. There are a lot of rivers and lakes on the earth.

[1] his, pig, big, **hill**, a hill – hills. Is there a lake near the hill? To ski down the hills. I like to ski down the hills in winter. Can you see those green hills near the river?

[aʊ] house, mouse, mouth, **mountain**, a mountain – mountains, high mountains. – Which is higher a hill or a mountain? – A mountain, of course! There are no high mountains in Great Britain. – What is the highest mountain on the earth? – I think, Everest is.

2 Give Jane's answers to Phil's questions.

Phil: Hello, Jane! Did you have a good holiday?

Jane:

Phil: Were you in the mountains?

Jane:

Phil: Where were you then?

Jane:

Phil: How was the weather there?

Jane:

3 One of you is Phil, the other is Jane. Act out the conversation. Change over.

4 Think of some more questions which Phil could ask Jane.

5 Learn to pronounce and use the new words,  103.

6 Try and read the new words.

nature ['neɪtʃə]

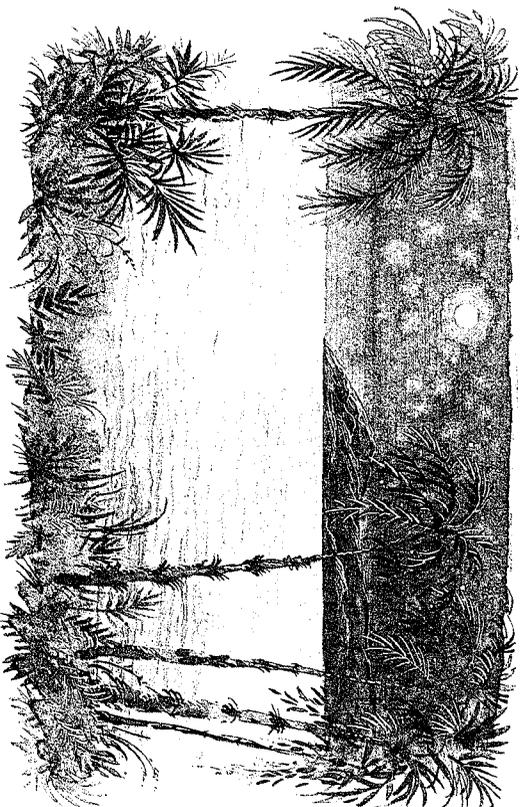
food – the moon

farm – star

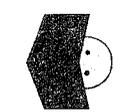
7 a) Ask your classmates questions on the pictures. (See page 135.)

b) Think of some wrong statements on the pictures.

c) Describe the pictures.



Let Us Read and Learn _____



8 Enjoy your English. Listen, read, learn and sing the song,
👁️👁️ 104.

A SAILOR

A sailor went to sea, sea, sea
To see what he could see, see, see.
But all that he could see, see, see
Was the blue, blue sea, sea, sea.

1 sailor ['seɪlə] — mɒpɪk

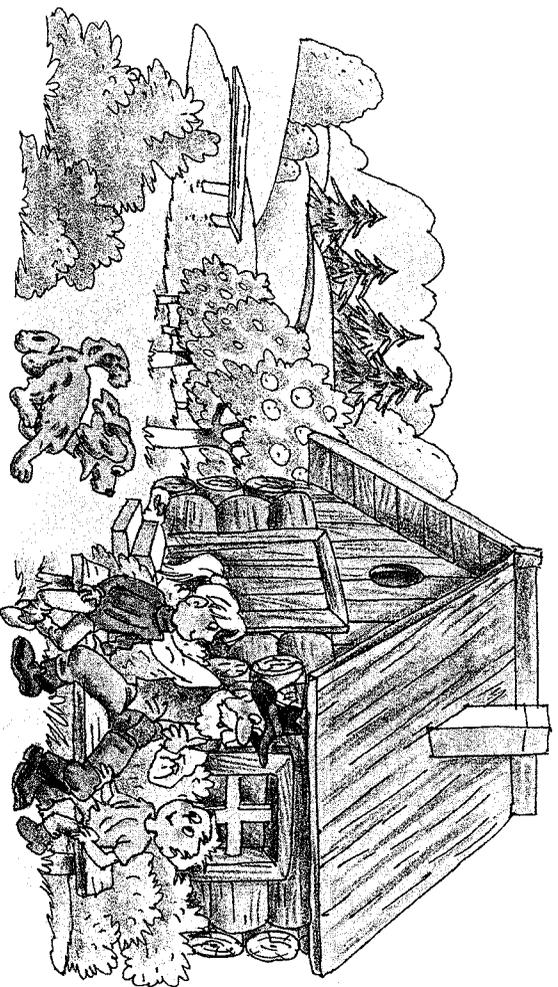


Let Us Read

9 Read the text and say why children like to spend their holidays at their grandfather's.¹

AT MY GRANDFATHER'S

My sister and I enjoy living in the country, that is why we usually spend our summer holidays at our grandfather's. He lives and works in the forest — he is a forester. He lives in a small house. He has a garden.² Different plants grow in his garden.



It's very beautiful there. There is a lake near the house. The lake is full of fish. Near the lake there are high green hills and large fields. A lot of different flowers grow in the fields. The forest is full of mushrooms³ and berries.⁴ Different birds and animals live on the hills and in the forest. Grandfather knows and loves them all. He knows a lot of things about animals: where they live in winter and in summer, what they eat, what they like to do, how they teach their children and play with them.

¹ at ... grandfather's — у дедушки

² garden ['gɑ:dən] — сад

³ mushroom ['mʌʃrʊm] — гриб

⁴ berry ['beri] — ягода

He knows all about birds, too. When a bird is singing he can say what bird it is. In winter, when there is not much food to eat in the forest, he gives the birds something to eat.

Grandfather likes the forest. He always says that the forest is full of wonders.

We like to listen to grandfather's stories about the forest's wonders.

10 Choose and read aloud the sentences to illustrate the picture.

Let Us Talk _____



11 Describe the picture (see Exercise 9).

12 Tell about the place where you lived in summer.

Let Us Write _____



13 What can you write about the picture (see Exercise 9)?

14 Learn to write these words.

earth, hill, mountain, nature, star, the moon

Puzzle Time _____



15 If you arrange the letters in the right order you will read an English proverb that you know.

H R S E B M T
E O T W S S

O I E A E
S S E A E

92 The Ninety-second Lesson
Lesson Ninety-two

93 The Ninety-third Lesson
Lesson Ninety-three

94 The Ninety-fourth Lesson
Lesson Ninety-four

Review 6

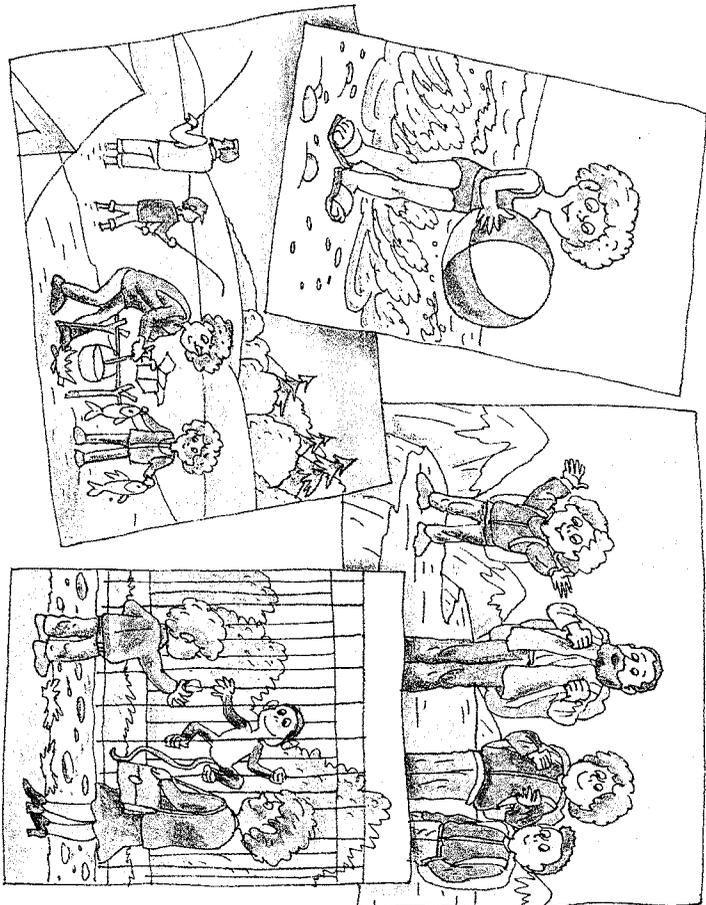


Let Us Talk _____

- 1 What words do you remember to describe seasons? The winner is the one who is the last to name a word.
- 2 Try and prove that the following statements are true.
 - Summer is the best season of a year.
 - You can have a lot of fun in winter.
 - Autumn is a dull season.
 - Autumn is a colourful season.
 - Autumn is a “tasty” season.
 - In spring nature awakens¹ from her long winter sleep.
 - Nature is full of wonders.
- 3 You had a very good time last summer, didn't you? Tell your classmates about your holidays. Be ready to answer their questions.

¹ awaken [ə'weɪkən] — просыпаться

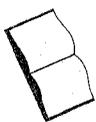
4 What do the photos tell you?



5 You've learned a lot about the English year. Tell your granny about it (don't forget about English holidays).

6 You've learned 7 poems and 4 songs (Lessons 79-85). Recite the poem and sing the song you like best.

Let Us Read

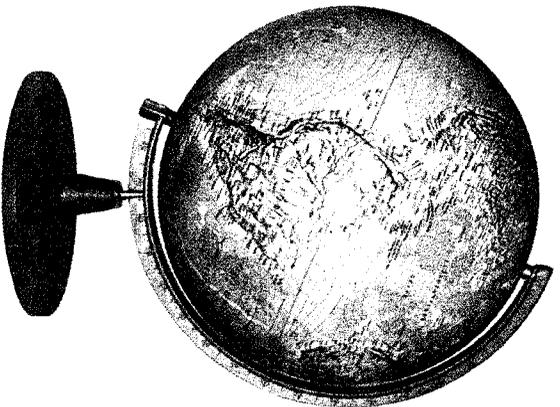


7 Read about the planet you live on.

THE EARTH

We live on the earth. It is very, very big. There is a lot of water on the earth. It is in rivers, lakes, seas and oceans. There are a lot of forests and fields, hills and mountains on it.

The earth is full of wonders. Different animals live on the earth. Different plants grow on it.
The earth is beautiful.



There are large countries and small countries. There are warm countries and cold countries. There are some countries where there are four seasons in a year and some countries where there are only two.

When it is day in one country it is night in another country.

When the sun shines it is day, when the sun does not shine it is night. You can see the moon and the stars in the sky at night.

People live in different countries. They speak different languages.

Our country is one of the largest countries in the world. It is so large that when it is morning in the east, it is evening in the west.

There are a lot of long rivers, beautiful lakes, large forests and fields and high mountains in our country.

People who live in our country speak more than two hundred different languages.

8 Answer the questions.

Where do people live? Is the earth big or small? What is there on the earth? Where is there water on the earth? How many oceans are there on the earth? What are the forests full of? What are the oceans full of? What is there on the mountains? The earth is beautiful, isn't it? Why? How do you know that the earth is big? Why do we say that the earth is full of wonders? When can you see the sun in the sky? When can you see the moon in the sky? Are there a lot of countries in the world? What languages do people in different countries speak? What country do you live in? What is the largest country in the world?

9 Speak about the country you live in.

10 Read the joke and say if the boy is a good pupil.

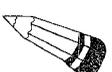
Teacher: Which is nearer to us, America or the moon?

Pupil: The moon.

Teacher: The moon? Why do you think so?

Pupil: Because we can see the moon and we can't see America.

Let Us Write _____



11 Write about something that you like.

95, The Ninety-fifth Lesson
Lesson Ninety-five

Text "Stone Soup"

96, The Ninety-sixth Lesson
Lesson Ninety-six

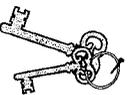
Text "English Ways"

97, The Ninety-seventh Lesson
Lesson Ninety-seven

98, The Ninety-eighth Lesson
Lesson Ninety-eight



99, The Ninety-ninth Lesson
Lesson Ninety-nine



Puzzle Time: Keys

Все ли ты отгадал в разделе **Puzzle Time**? Вот ответы:

Lesson 41: (1) fox, (2) bear.

Lesson 42: pet, clever, short, yesterday, look, teach, toy, only, neck, long, tail, shop, open, party, put.

Lesson 45: 1. ears, 2. head, 3. nose, 4. mouth, 5. hands, 6. face, 7. hair, 8. eyes.

Lesson 51: crocodile, cow, horse, monkey, dog, tiger, lion, elephant, goat, cat.

Lesson 52: He has got black hair, blue eyes, a long nose, a short neck.

Lesson 53: My favourite animal is a lion.

Lesson 54: (1) an elephant, (2) a mouse.

Lesson 59: interesting, girl, left, tea, apple, egg, glass, shoulder, right, tail, leg, grey, yellow, week, kitten, now, wolf, foot, toe.

Lesson 60: big — pig, take — make, silk — milk, talk — walk, look — book, life — wife, carrot — parrot, bear — wear, box — fox, boy — toy, now — how, peck — neck, cat — cap, foot — boot, food — good.

Lesson 61: sweater.

Lesson 62: 1) cap, 2) hat, 3) shoe, 4) boot, 5) jeans, 6) jacket, 7) sweater, 8) trousers.

Lesson 67: 1. shirt, 2. shorts, 3. boots, 4. blouse, 5. sweater, 6. jeans, 7. skirt, 8. shoes.

Lesson 68: The right thing in the right place.

Lesson 69: 1. blouse, 2. jacket, 3. T-shirt, 4. socks, 5. shorts, 6. coat, 7. tights.

Lesson 70: I love my mother dearly.

Lesson 73: night — right, near — ear, skirt — shirt, big — pig, blouses — trousers, let — pet, there — wear, wrong — long, farm — arm, my — eye, bought — taught, thought — short.

Lesson 76: autumn.

Lesson 77: Tastes differ.

Lesson 78: February, winter, January, season, summer, because, spring, autumn, weather, December, November.

Lesson 79: January, February, March, April, November, December, winter, spring, summer, autumn, leave, grass.

Lesson 81: My favourite season is summer.

Lesson 82: Do English people celebrate Halloween?

Lesson 83: 1. January, 2. February, 3. March, 4. April, 5. May, 6. June, 7. July, 8. August, 9. October, 10. November, 11. December.

Lesson 86: May, April, March, August, October, January, November, December, February, September.

Lesson 89: How many oceans are there on the earth?

Lesson 90: Phil — hill, lake — make, day — May, train — rain, all — fall, wing — spring, summer — drummer, South — mouth, chest — West.

Lesson 91: East or West home is best.

Reference Grammar¹

Имена существительные
(The Nouns)

§ 1. Существительные в английском языке, как и в русском, обозначают **о д у ш е в л е н н ы е** (*a girl, a cat*) и **н е о д у ш е в л е н н ы е** предметы (*a toy, a book*), вещества (*milk, bread*) и явления природы (*snow, rain*). Они бывают **и с ч и с л я е м ы е** (*a girl, a toy*) и **н е и с ч и с л я е м ы е** (*milk, rain*).

Перед одушевленными и неодушевленными исчисляемыми существительными ставится особое слово — артикль: *a (an)* перед существительными только в единственном числе (*an pencil*), *the* — в единственном и во множественном числе:

<i>a boy</i> — <i>the boy</i>	<i>boys</i> — <i>the boys</i>
<i>an apple</i> — <i>the apple</i>	<i>apples</i> — <i>the apples</i>

Неопределенный артикль употребляется, если имеется в виду любой предмет из ему подобных:

Give me a toy. Дай мне игрушку (любую).

Определенный артикль обозначает, что имеется в виду конкретный, определенный предмет:

Give me the toy. Дай мне игрушку (именно эту).

Перед неисчисляемыми существительными, обозначающими вещества и явления, неопределенный артикль обычно не ставится (а определенный может употребляться):

work — *the work*
rain — *the rain*

¹ Reference Grammar — Грамматический справочник

Артикль не употребляется перед именами, фамилиями, названиями городов и стран:

Ann, Pete, Brown, London, Moscow, England, Great Britain

Но следует запомнить, что определенный артикль, как правило, употребляется со следующими словами:

the sun, the moon, the sky, the earth

Большинство существительных имеют два числа: **единственное** и **множественное**. Множественное число образуется при помощи окончания **-s** или **-es**, которое произносится как [s], [z], [ɪz].¹

[s]	[z]	[ɪz]
после глухих согласных	после звонких согласных и гласных	после шипящих и свистящих
cats books pets	dogs days tables	boxes dresses

Некоторые существительные образуют множественное число не по правилам, и их нужно запомнить: *a man — men, a woman — women, a child — children, a mouse — mice, a foot — feet, a sheep — sheep*

Существительные, обозначающие вещества, явления, не употребляются во множественном числе:

much/a lot of **milk (water, bread, tea, snow, work ...)**

Особенности правописания существительных во множественном числе:

-f → v + -es

-y → i + -es (если перед “y” стоит согласная)

a leaf — leaves	a country — countries
a wife — wives	a family — families
a wolf — wolves	a party — parties
	<i>НО:</i> a day — days

¹ Следует запомнить: a house [haʊs] — houses [ˈhaʊzɪz].

В английском языке существительные не изменяются по падежам и только одушевленные существительные имеют два падежа: **обший** и **притяжательный**. Притяжательный падеж образуется путем добавления 's к существительному в единственном числе и знака апострофа ' к существительному во множественном числе:

the pupil's book — книга ученика
the pupils' books — книги учеников

Окончание 's произносится как [s], [z], [ɪz]:

[s]	[z]	[ɪz]
<i>после глухих согласных</i>	<i>после звонких согласных и гласных</i>	<i>после шипящих и свистящих</i>
Jack's cat the cat's nose the cats' tails	Ann's dog the father's book the pupils' books	George's book the mouse's tail the tortoises' legs

Если существительное образует множественное число не по правилам, то в притяжательном падеже прибавляется 's (как и в единственном числе):

men's hats — мужские шляпы
women's dresses — женские платья
children's books — детские книги

Многие прилагательные (The Adjective)

Прилагательные в английском языке не изменяются по числам и падежам, но, так же как и в русском языке, имеют три степени сравнения: **положительную, сравнительную** и **превосходную**. Сравнительная степень однословных и двусловных прилагательных образуется с помощью суффикса **-er**, превосходная — **-est**:

small — smaller — (the) smallest
clever — cleverer — (the) cleverest

Многоложные прилагательные образуют сравнительную степень при помощи слова *more*, превосходную степень при помощи слова *most*:

beautiful — *more* beautiful — (the) *most* beautiful
interesting — *more* interesting — (the) *most* interesting

Следует запомнить особые случаи образования степеней сравнения прилагательных:

good — *better* — (the) *best*
bad — *worse* — (the) *worst*

Особенности правописания степеней сравнения прилагательных:

— непроизносимая немая “e” опускается и прибавляется **-er, -est**:

nice — *nicer* — (the) *nicest*
large — *larger* — (the) *largest*

— в одноложных прилагательных согласная удваивается после кратких гласных:

big — *bigger* — (the) *biggest*
hot — *hotter* — (the) *hottest*

— конечная “y” после согласной меняется на “i”:

happy — *happier* — (the) *happiest*
funny — *funnier* — (the) *funniest*

Урок 10. Числительные
(The Numbers)

В английском языке, как и в русском, есть **количественные** и **порядковые числительные**.

Количественные числительные от **13** до **19** образуются прибавлением суффикса **-teen**:

four — *fourteen*
nine — *nineteen*

Числительные **thirteen** и **fifteen** изменяют орфографию в основе слова (*сравни: three, five*).

Числительные, обозначающие десятки от 20 до 90, образуются путем прибавления суффикса *-ty*:

seven — *seventy*
nine — *ninety*

Числительные *twenty, thirty, forty, fifty* изменяют орфографию в основе слова (*сравни: two, three, four, five*).

Порядковые числительные, кроме *first, second, third*, образуются от соответствующих количественных числительных путем прибавления суффикса *-th (-eth)*:

six — *sixth*
thirty-seven — *thirty-seventh*

Суффикс *-eth* прибавляется к числительным, оканчивающимся на *-ty*, при этом “*y*” меняется на “*i*”:

thirty — *thirtieth*

Чтение сложных числительных и дат:

500 people — *five hundred people*
705 books — *seven hundred and five books*
in 1905 — *in nineteen o [əv] five*
in 1917 — *in nineteen seventeen*

September 5th, 1999 — *September the fifth, nineteen ninety-nine; the fifth of September, nineteen ninety-nine.*

В английском языке есть **личные, притяжательные, указательные, неопределенные** и другие **местоимения**.

Личные (*кто? кого? кому? кем? о ком?*)

<i>Единственное число</i>		<i>Множественное число</i>	
I	— me	we	— us
he	— him	you	— you
she	— her	they	— them
it	— it		

Притяжательные (чей? чья? чье?)

Единственное число

Множественное число

(I) — my
(he) — his
(she) — her
(it) — its

(we) — our
(you) — your
(they) — their

Указательные

Единственное число

Множественное число

this
that

these
those

Неопределенные

some, any, no и их производные
some — something — somebody
any — anything — anybody
no — nothing — nobody

В английском языке в отрицательном предложении может быть только одно отрицание:

There is **no** milk in the cup.
There **isn't** any milk in the cup.
I saw **nobody** in the room.
I **didn't** see **anybody** in the room.

В русском языке у глагола есть три времени: **настоящее**, **прошедшее** и **будущее**, а в английском языке времен больше. В третьем классе нужно знать и уметь правильно употреблять четыре времени: *the simple present tense* (настоящее неопределенное время): "I read every day"; *the simple past tense* (прошедшее неопределенное время): "I read [red] yesterday"; *the future tense* (будущее время): "I shall read tomorrow"; *the present continuous tense* (настоящее продолженное время): "I am reading now".

Simple present употребляется для выражения *действия*, которое происходит *всегда, постоянно, обычно*; часто со словами **usually, always, often, every day (week, month, year, Sunday ...)** и другими, которые всегда стоят перед смысловым глаголом или в конце предложения, но после глагола to be:

We **always go** to the country in summer.

The pupils **speak English every day.**

He **is often late.**

В 3-м лице единственного числа к глаголу прибавляется окончание **-s** или **-es**, которое читается как [s], [z], [ɪz]:

[s]	[z]	[ɪz]
<i>после глухих согласных</i>	<i>после звонких согласных и гласных</i>	<i>после шипящих и свистящих</i>
works helps takes	falls goes becomes	dresses watches

He **watches TV** every evening.

She **usually helps her** granny about the house.

Особенности правописания глаголов в 3-м лице единственного числа:

— в глаголах, оканчивающихся на “y” с предшествующей согласной, “y” меняется на “i” и добавляется окончание **-es**:

to try — he (she, it) **tries**

No: to play — he (she, it) **plays**

— в глаголах, оканчивающихся на “o”, прибавляется **-es**:

to go — he (she, it) **goes**

to do — he (she, it) **does**

Вопросительная и отрицательная формы образуются с помощью вспомогательного глагола **do (does)**.

Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма
I work.	Do I work?	I do not work.
He She It } work.	Does he she it } work?	He She It } does not work.
We You They } work.	Do we you they } work?	We You They } do not work.

Simple past употребляется для выражения действия или состояния, имевшего место в прошлом и не связанного с настоящим моментом, часто со словами **yesterday, ago, last week (month, year, summer, Sunday ...)** и с указанием дат: in 1941, in 1990 и т. д.:

Yesterday my father and I went to the swimming pool.

The boys **played** hockey **last Sunday**.

In 1997 our family **lived** in Kiev.

Last week we **saw** an interesting play at the Children's Theatre.

В английском языке различают **правильные** и **неправильные** глаголы. **Правильные** глаголы образуют прошедшее время путем добавления окончания **-ed** или **-d**, которое читается как [t], [d], [ɪd]:

[t]	[d]	[ɪd]
<i>после глухих согласных</i> dressed helped danced	<i>после звонких согласных и гласных</i> opened played answered	<i>после букв t, d</i> counted wanted collected

Особенности правописания **правильных** глаголов:

— конечная согласная удваивается в односложных и двусложных глаголах с краткой гласной:

skip — **skipped**
stop — **stopped**
hop — **hopped**

— в глаголах, оканчивающихся на “y” с предшествующей гласной, “y” меняется на “i” и добавляется окончание **-ed**:

try — **tried**
cry — **cried**
No: play — **played**

Формы simple past **неправильных** глаголов следует запомнить:

become — **became**
get — **got**
know — **knew**

Вопросительная и отрицательная формы образуются с помощью вспомогательного глагола **did**.

Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма
I He She It We You They	Did { I he she it we you they }	I He She It We You They
helped/went.	help/go?	did not help/go.

§ 4. Future употребляется для выражения *действия* или *стояния в будущем*; часто со словами **tomorrow, next week (Sunday, month, year ...)**. Оно образуется при помощи вспомогательных глаголов **shall** для 1-го лица единственного и множественного числа и **will** во всех остальных случаях:

We shall go to the sea next month.
 My friend will visit his granny tomorrow.

Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма
I shall He } She } will It } We shall You } They } will	Shall I he } she } it } will we } you } they } will	I shall He } She } will It } We shall You } They } will
work	work?	not work.

§ 5. Present continuous употребляется для выражения действия, которое происходит в настоящее время, в момент речи. Оно образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола *to be* в формах настоящего времени (*am, is, are*) и добавления *-ing* к смысловому глаголу:

I am reading an interesting book now.
 He is writing a letter to his friend.
 They are playing hockey.

Особенности правописания:

— конечная согласная удваивается в односложных и двусложных глаголах с предшествующей краткой гласной:

sit — sitting
 swim — swimming
 begin — beginning

— немое “e” не пишется перед *-ing*:

write — writing
 make — making
 take — taking

Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма
I am He is She is It is We are You are They are	Am I Is he Is she Is it Are we Are you Are they	I am He is She is It is We are You are They are
working.	working?	not working.

Повелительное наклонение в английском языке, как и в русском, употребляется для выражения **просьб, приказаний, приглашений, запретений**. Оно имеет две формы: **утвердительную** и **отрицательную**.

Утвердительная форма	Отрицательная форма
Stand up! Give it to me, please. Let's go there!	Don't stand up! Don't give it to me, please! Let us not go there!

Утверждение
[Don't stand up!]
[Let us not go there!]

В английском языке **наречие** часто образуется от прилагательных при помощи прибавления суффикса **-ly**:

quick — quickly No: good — well
 slow — slowly
 bad — badly

English-Russian Vocabulary

119

- *¹ about [ə'baʊt] о
- * according to [ə'kɔ:dɪŋ tə] в соответствии с
- * act [ækt] играть роль
- * action ['æksɪn] действие
- Africa ['æfrɪkə] Африка
- * after [ɑ:'ftə] после
- afternoon [ɑ:'ftə:nju:n] полдень
in the afternoon в полдень
- * again [ə'geɪn] опять, ещё раз
- * ago [ə'gəʊ] тому назад
- * agree [ə'grɪ:] соглашаться
- * all [ɔ:l] все, всё
- * alone [ə'ləʊn] одинокий
- all alone ['ɔ:l ə'ləʊn] совсем один
- * aloud [ə'ləʊd] вслух
- * alphabetical [ælfə'betɪkəl] алфавитный
- always ['ɔ:lweɪz] всегда
- am [æm, əm] *I-e n. ed. ч. н. ep. gl. to be*
- America [ə'merɪkə] Америка
- and [ænd, ənd] и
- * angry ['æŋgrɪ] сердитый, злой
- animal ['ænɪmə] животное
- another [ə'nʌðə] другой (-ая, -ое, -ие)
- * answer ['ɑ:nsə] отвечать
- any [ˈeni] какой-нибудь, сколько-нибудь
- anybody [ˈenɪbɒdi] кто-нибудь, кто-то
- anything [ˈeniθɪŋ] что-нибудь, что-то
- apple ['æpl] яблоко
- April [ˈeɪprɪl] апрель
- are [ɑ:] *мн. ч. н. ep. gl. to be*
- arm [ɑ:m] рука
- around [ə'raʊnd] вокруг
- * arrange [ə'reɪndʒ] располагать, классифицировать
- * Asia [ˈeɪʃə] Азия
- * ask [ɑ:sk] спрашивать
- * asleep [ə'sli:p] спящий
- at [æt, ət] у, около
- August ['ɔ:gəst] август
- aunt [ɑ:nt] тетья
- autumn ['ɔ:təm] осень
- awaken [ə'weɪkən] просыпаться
- away from [ə'weɪ frɒm] вдали от
- bad [bæd] (worse [wɜ:s], (the) worst [wɜ:st]) плохой (хуже, наихудший)
- badminton ['bædmɪntən] бадминтон
- play badminton играть в бадминтон

¹ Слова, отмеченные звездочкой (*), не входят в лексический минимум 3 класса.

- bag** [bæg] сумка, мешок
ball [bɔ:l] мяч
 * **banana** [bə'nɑ:nə] банан
 * **bagk** [bɑ:k] лаять
 * **basket** ['bɑ:skɪt] корзина
basketball ['bɑ:skɪtbɔ:l] баскетбол
play basketball играть в баскетбол
be [bi:] (was, were) быть, находиться
 * **be in** находиться дома
 * **beach** [bi:tʃ] пляж
bear [beə] медведь
beautiful ['bjʊ:tɪfʊl] красивый
because [bi'kɔ:z] потому что
 * **become** [bi'kʌm] (became [br'keɪm]) стать, становиться
bed [bed] кровать
go to bed ложиться спать
before [br'fɔ:] перед, до
 * **begin** [br'gɪn] (began [br'gæŋ]) начинать
 * **behind** [br'haind] позади
 * **believe** [br'li:v] верить
 * **belong** [br'lɒŋ] принадлежать
 * **berry** ['berɪ] ягода
best [best] наилучший
 * **between** [br'twi:n] между
big [bɪg] большой
bird [bɜ:d] птица
birthday ['bɜ:θdeɪ] день рождения
Happy birthday! С днем рождения!
black [blæk] черный
 * **blink** [blɪŋk] моргать
blouse [blaʊz] блузка
blue [blu:] голубой, синий
 * **boast** [brəʊst] хвастаться
 * **boaster** ['brəʊstə] хвастун
 * **bob** [bɒb] постукивать

- body** ['bɒdɪ] тело, туловище
 * **bone** [brəʊn] кость
book [bʊk] книга
boot [bu:t] ботинок
 * **both** [brʊθ] оба
both ... and ... и ... и ...
box [bɒks] коробка, ящик
boy [bɔɪ] мальчик
 * **bracket** ['bræktɪ] скобка
bread [bred] хлеб
breakfast ['breɪkfəst] завтрак
have breakfast завтракать
bright [braɪt] яркий, блестящий
bring [brɪŋ] (brought [brɔ:t]) приносить
brother ['brʌðə] брат
brown [braʊn] коричневый
 * **bucket** ['bʌktɪ] ведро
 * **build** [bɪld] (built [bɪlt]) построить
busy ['bɪzi] занятый
but [bʌt, bət] но
butter ['bʌtə] масло
 * **butterfly** ['bʌtəflaɪ] бабочка
buy [baɪ] (bought [brɔ:t]) покупать
bye [baɪ] до свидания, пока

- * **cabin** ['kæbɪn] хижина
 * **call** [kɔ:l] теленок
 * **call** [kɔ:l] звонить, звать, называть
can [kæn] (could [kʊd]) мочь, уметь
can't [kɑ:nɪ] = **cannot** ['kænɒt]
 * **candle** ['kændl] свеча
car [kɑə] кепка, шапка
 * **card** [kɑ:d] открытка

* greeting card [ˈgri:tɪŋ ˈkɑ:d] поздравительная открытка	* coat [kəʊt] пиджак
garrot [ˈkægərl] морковь	* code [kəʊd] код
cat [kæt] кот, кошка	coffee [ˈkɒfi] кофе
* catch [kæʃ] (caught [kɔ:t]) ловить, поймать	cold [kəʊld] холодный
МАТЬ	It's cold. Холодно.
* category [ˈkætəgəri] категория	colour [ˈkʌlə] цвет
celebrate [ˈselɪbreɪt] праздновать	* column [ˈkɒləm] столбик, колонка
certainly [ˈsɜ:tnli] конечно	come [kʌm] (came [keɪm]) приходиться
* chainword [ˈtʃeɪnwɜ:d] чайнворд	come back [bæk] возвращаться
chair [tʃeə] стул	come home приходиться домой
* champion [ˈtʃæmpiən] чемпион	come in входить
* change [tʃeɪndʒ] менять	* Some one! Живей!
* change over [ˈtʃeɪndʒ ˈəʊvə] меняться (<i>роли</i>)	* compare [kəmˈpeə] сравнивать
chart [tʃɑ:t] таблица	* comparison [kəmˈpærɪsn] сравнение
* cheese [tʃi:z] сыр	* make a comparison проводить сравнение
chess [tʃes] шахматы	НИЕ
play chess играть в шахматы	* complete [kəmˈpli:t] заканчивать
* chicken [ˈtʃɪkɪn] цыпленок	* compose [kəmˈpəʊz] сочинять
child [tʃaɪld] ребенок	* composition [kəmˈpɒzɪʃn] сочинение
children [ˈtʃɪldrən] дети	* computer [kəmˈpjʊtə] компьютер
* chip [tʃɪp] подбородок	* congratulate on [kənˈgræʃju:leɪt] поздравлять
* chocolate [ˈtʃɒk(ə)leɪt] шоколад	ЛЯТЬ
* choose [tʃu:z] (chose [tʃəʊz]) выбирать	* conversation [kɒnvəˈseɪʃn] разговор, беседа
РАТЬ	cookie [ˈkʊki] печенье
* Christmas [ˈkrɪsməs] Рождество	* copy [ˈkɒpi] списывать
Christmas tree рождественская елка	* correct [kəˈrekt] исправлять, поправлять; правильный, верный
Merry Christmas! С Рождеством!	cosmonaut [ˈkɒsmɒnɔ:t] космонавт
* city [ˈsɪti] большой город	* cotton [ˈkɒtn] хлопок
* classmate [ˈklɑ:smeɪt] одноклассник	country [ˈkʌntri] страна; сельская местность
clean [kli:n] чистить; чистый	НОСТЬ
clever [ˈklevə] умный	in the country за городом; в деревне;
* clock [klɒk] часы (<i>стенные, настольные</i>),	на даче
<i>башенные</i>)	* cousin [ˈkaʊzn] двоюродный брат (кузен); двоюродная сестра (кузина)
* close [kləʊz] закрывать	

- cow [kaʊ] корова
 crocodile ['krɒkədəɪl] крокодил
 * cub [kʌb] детеныш
 cup [kʌp] чашка
 * curious ['kjʊəriəs] любопытный, любо-
 знательный
- * dance [dɑ:ns] танцевать
 * dark [dɑ:k] темный
 daughter ['dɔ:tə] дочь
 day [deɪ] день
 day off выходной день
 one day однажды
- * dear [dɪə] дорогой (-ая, -ое, -ие)
 nearest and dearest ['neɪst ənd 'deɪstɪ]
 самые близкие и дорогие
 Oh, dear! О, боже!
 December [dɪ'sembə] декабрь
 decorate ['deɪkəreɪt] украшать
 * depend (on) [dɪ'pend] зависеть (от)
 * describe [dɪ'skraɪb] описывать
 * diagram ['daɪəgræm] диаграмма, схе-
 ма
- * dialogue ['daiələʒ] диалог
 different ['dɪfrənt] разный
 dinner ['dɪnə] обед
 for dinner на обед
 have dinner обедать
 * disagree [,dɪsə'grɪ:] не соответствовать,
 не соглашаться
 do [du:] (did [dɪd]) делать
 do exercises ['eksəsaɪzɪz] делать заряд-
 ку

- do homework ['həʊmwɜ:k] выполнять
 домашнее задание
 doctor ['dɒktə] доктор
 dog [dɒg] собака
 * doghouse ['dɒghaʊs] конура
 doll [dɒl] кукла
 domestic [də'mestɪk] домашний
 * door [dɔ:] дверь
 * double ['dʌbl] удвоенный
 * doubt [daʊt] сомневаться; сомнение
 draw [drɔ:] (drew [dru:]) рисовать
 dress [dres] одеваться; платье
 drink [drɪŋk] (drank [dræŋk]) пить
 driver ['draɪvə] шофер
 * dry [draɪ] сухой
 duck [dʌk] утка
 * duckling ['dʌklɪŋ] утенок
 * dull [dʌl] скучный, грустный
 It's dull. Скучно. Грустно.
 during ['dʒʉərɪŋ] в течение, во время

- * each [i:tʃ] каждый
 ear [ɪə] ухо
 by the ears за уши
 * early ['ɜ:li] рано
 earth [ɜ:θ] земля
 * east [i:st] восток
 * Easter ['i:stə] Пасха
 easily ['i:zɪli] легко
 * easy ['i:zi] легкий
 eat [i:t] (ate [et]) есть, кушать
 egg [eg] яйцо
 eight [eɪt] восемь

eighteen [eɪ'ti:n] восемнадцать
eighth [eɪθ] восьмой
eighty ['eɪti] восемьдесят
elephant ['elɪfənt] слон
eleven [ɪ'velən] одиннадцать
* **else** [els] еще
* **end** [end] конец
engineer [ˌendʒiˈniə] инженер
* **English** ['ɪŋɡlɪʃ] английский
the English англичане
enjoy [ɪn'dʒɔɪ] наслаждаться
* **equivalent** [ɪ'kwɪvələnt] эквивалент; рав-
нозначный
* **eye** [iːv] канун
on the eve накануне
evening ['iːvɪŋ] вечер
in the evening вечером
every ['evri] каждый
every day каждый день
everyone ['evriwʌn] все
everything ['evriθɪŋ] всё
excuse [ɪks'kjuːz] извинять(ся)
Excuse me! Извините!
exercise ['eksəsaɪz] упражнение
morning exercises утренняя зарядка
* **explain** [ɪk'spleɪn] объяснить
* **express** [ɪk'spres] выражать
eye [aɪ] глаз

FF

* **fall down** ['fɔ:l 'daʊn] (**fell** [fel]) па-
дать
* **fall out** ['fɔ:l 'aʊt] выпадать
* **false** [fɔ:ls] ложный, фальшивый
family ['fæmli] семья
* **famous** ['feɪməs] знаменитый
* **farm** [fɑ:m] ферма
* **farmer** ['fɑ:mə] фермер
father ['fa:ðə] отец
favorite ['feɪvərɪt] любимый
February ['febrʊəri] февраль
* **feed** [fi:d] (**fed** [fed]) кормить
feet см. **foot**
field [fi:ld] поле
fifteen [fɪ'fi:tɪn] пятнадцать
fifth [fɪθ] пятый
fifty ['fɪftɪ] пятьдесят
* **fight** [faɪt] бой
* **fill in** ['fi 'ɪn] заполнять
* **film** [fɪlm] фильм
* **find** [faɪnd] (**found** [faʊnd]) находить
* **find out** ['faɪnd 'aʊt] выяснять
fine [faɪn] хороший, прекрасный
I'm fine! У меня всё хорошо! Я себя
прекрасно чувствую!
* **finger** ['fɪŋɡə] палец (*на руке*)
* **finish** ['fɪnɪʃ] финиш
* **finish up** закончить
* **fire** ['faɪə] огонь
first [fɜ:st] 1. первый; 2. сначала
fish [fɪʃ] рыба
go fishing ходить на рыбную ловлю
* **fish out** выловить
five [faɪv] пять
* **flower** ['flaʊə] цветок
* **fly** [flaɪ] летать

- * following [ˈfɒləʊɪŋ] следующий
- food [fu:d] еда
- * fool [fu:l] дурак; дурачить
- April Fool's Day 1 апреля – никому не верь
- foot [fʊt] нога (feet [fi:t] ноги)
- football [ˈfʊtbɔ:l] футбол
- play football играть в футбол
- * for [fɔ:, fə] для
- forest [ˈfɒrɪst] лес
- * forget [fə'get] (forgot [fə'gɒt]) забыть-вать
- four [fɔ:] четыре
- fourth [fɔ:θ] четвертый
- fox [fɒks] лиса
- friend [frend] друг, подруга
- from [frɒm, frəm] из
- fruit [fru:t] фрукты
- * full (ɒf) [fʊl] полный
- * fun [fʌn] веселье, забава
- funny [ˈfʌni] смешной, забавный
- * future [ˈfju:tʃə] будущее (время)

BR

- game [geɪm] игра
- play games играть в игры
- * gap [gæp] пропуск
- * garden [ˈgɑ:dn] сад
- * gay [geɪ] веселый
- * get [get] (got [gɒt]) достать, становить-ся
- get up вставать, просыпаться
- giraffe [dʒɪ'ra:fi] жираф

- girl [gɜ:l] девочка
- give [gɪv] (gave [geɪv]) давать
- glass [glɑ:s] стакан
- glove [glɒv] перчатка
- go [gəʊ] (went [went]) ходить
- go for a walk [wɜ:k] гулять
- go to bed [bed] ложиться спать
- go shopping [ˈʃɒpɪŋ] ходить за покуп-ками
- good [gʊd] (better [ˈbeta], (the) best [best]) хороший (лучше, самый хороший)
- be good at способный к чему-то; умеющий хорошо что-то делать
- * goodnight [ˌgʊdˈnaɪt] спокойной но-чи
- * granddaughter [ˈgræn,dɔ:tə] внучка
- grandfather [ˈgrænd,fɑ:ðə] дедушка
- grandmother [ˈgræn,mʌðə] бабушка
- * grandson [ˈgrænsn] внук
- grass [grɑ:s] трава
- great [greɪt] великий
- Great! Великолепно! Блеск!
- You look great! Ты выглядишь вели-колепно!
- Great Britain [ˌgreɪt ˈbrɪn] Великобри-тания
- green [grin] зеленый
- grey [greɪ] серый
- ground [graʊnd] земля
- * group [gru:p] группа; сгруппировать
- grow [grəʊ] (grew [gru:ɪ]) расти
- * guess [ges] отгадывать
- * guide [gaɪd] руководство, образец
- * gum [gʌm] смола, резина
- * gun [gʌn] ружье

hair [heɪ] волосы

* half [ha:f] половина

hamburger [ˈhæmbɜ:ɡə] гамбургер

hamster [ˈhæmstɜ] хомяк

hand [hænd] рука (*кисть*)

happy [ˈhæpi] счастливый

Happy New Year! С Новым годом!

hare [heɪ] заяц

has [hæz] 3-е л. ед. ч. н. ер. гл. to have

имеет

hat [hæt] шляпа

have [hæv] имеют, имеете

he [hi] он

head [hed] голова

* headache [ˈhedek] головная боль

* heart [hɑ:t] сердце

* by heart наизусть

Hello! [heˈləʊ] Здравствуйте! Привет!

help [help] помогать

help about the house [haus] помогать

по дому

* Help yourself [i:ˈself]! Угощайтесь!

* hen [hen] курица

her [hɜ:] ее

here [hiə] здесь

Here it is! Вот!

Hi! [hai] Привет!

hide-and-seek [ˌhaɪdənˈsi:k] игра в прятки

play hide-and-seek играть в прятки

* high [hai] высокий

* high boots [ˈhaɪ ˈbu:ts] сапоги

hill [hɪl] холм

his [hɪz] его

hockey [ˈhɒki] хоккей

play hockey играть в хоккей

holiday [ˈhɒlɪdeɪ] праздник; отпуск

* holidays [ˈhɒlɪdeɪz] каникулы

to be on holidays быть на каникулах

to go for a holiday ехать в отпуск

home [həʊm] дом

at home дома

homework [ˈhəʊmwɜ:k] домашняя ра-

бота

do homework делать домашнюю ра-

боту

* honey [ˈhʌni] мед

hope [həʊp] надеяться

horoscopes [ˈhɒrɒskɔ:p] детская игра в

«Классы»

play horoscopes играть в «Классы»

horse [hɔ:s] лошадь

hot [hɒt] жаркий, горячий

I'm hot. Мне жарко.

It's hot. Жарко.

It's terribly hot! Страшно жарко!

how [haʊ] как

How are you? Как поживаете?

How many? Сколько?

How old are you? Сколько вам лет?

hundred [ˈhʌndrəd] сто

hungry [ˈhʌŋɡri] голодный

* hunt [hʌnt] охотиться

husband [ˈhʌzbənd] муж

I [aɪ] я

ice cream [aɪs ˈkri:m] мороженое

idea [aɪ'diə] идея, мысль

That's a good idea! Вот это идея!

if [ɪf] если

ill [ɪl] больной

* **illustrate** ['ɪlɪstreɪt] иллюстрировать

* **important** [ɪm'pɔ:t(ə)nt] важный

in [ɪn] в

indeed [ɪn'di:d] в самом деле, действи-

тельно

* **information** [ɪn'fɔ:m'eɪʃn] информация

interesting ['ɪntrɪstɪŋ] интересный

into ['ɪntə] в

invite [ɪn'vaɪt] приглашать

* **Ireland** ['aɪələnd] Ирландия

is [ɪz] 3-е л. ед. ч. н. вр. гл. **to be**

it [ɪt] он, она, оно (о предметах и жи-
вотных); это

it's = it is

11

jacket ['dʒækt] куртка

jam [dʒæm] джем, варенье

January ['dʒænjuəri] январь

jeans [dʒi:nz] джинсы

* **joke** [dʒəʊk] шутка

juice [dʒus] сок

July [dʒu:'laɪ] июль

jump [dʒʌmp] прыгать

June [dʒu:n] июнь

KK

* **keep** [ki:p] (**kept** [kept]) держать, хра-
нить

keep promise ['ki:pmsɪs] исполнить обе-
щание

* **kind** [kaɪnd] добрый; вид, род

What kind of books ...? Какие кни-
ги ...?

What kind of animals ...? Какие жи-
вотные ...?

* **kiss** [kɪs] целовать

* **kitchen** ['kɪtʃn] кухня

kitten ['kɪtn] котенок

* **knock** [nɒk] стучать

know [nəʊ] (**knew** [nju:]) знать

(is) known [ɪz 'nəʊn] известный, узна-
ваемый

11

* **ladder** ['lædə] лестница

lake [leɪk] озеро

* **language** ['læŋgwɪdʒ] язык

(the) English language ['ɪŋɡlɪʃ 'læŋgwɪdʒ]

английский язык

(the) Russian language ['rʌʃən 'læŋgwɪdʒ]

русский язык

* **large** [lɑ:dʒ] большой

last [lɑ:st] последний, прошлый

at last наконец

* **late** [leɪt] поздний

It's late. Поздно.

leaf [li:f] (**leaves** [li:vz]) лист (листья)

leap-frog ['li:pfrɒŋ] чехарда

play leap-frog играть в чехарду

* **learn** [lɜ:n] (**learned** [lɜ:nt]) учиться,
учить (что-либо)

* **learn by heart** ['lɜ:n baɪ 'hɑ:t] учиться на-
изусть

left [left] левый
 leg [leg] нога
 * lemon ['lemən] лимон
 * let's [lets] давай(те)
 * letter ['letə] письмо
 * life [laɪf] жизнь
 * light [laɪt] огонек; легкий
 like [laɪk] нравиться, любить; подобно,
 как

* line [laɪn] линия
 lion ['laɪən] лев
 * lip [lɪp] губа
 * list [lɪst] список
 * listen (to) ['lɪsn] слушать
 * listener ['lɪsnə] слушатель
 little ['lɪtl] маленький
 live [lɪv] жить
 * logical ['lɒdʒɪkəl] логический, последо-
 вательный

* London ['lʌndən] Лондон
 long [lɒŋ] длинный
 look [lʊk] смотреть; выглядеть
 look after присматривать, ухажи-
 вать
 look at смотреть на
 look for искать
 look beautiful ['bju:tɪfʊl] выглядеть ве-
 ликолепно
 look terrible ['terɪbəl] выглядеть ужас-
 но

* lot [lɒt] много, масса
 * a lot of/lots очень много; громадное
 количество; масса, уйма
 love [lʌv] любить
 I'd love to. Мне бы очень хотелось.
 С удовольствием.

11*

* lovely ['lʌvli] восхитительный
 * luck [lʌk] удача
 lunch [lʌntʃ] второй завтрак
 for lunch на второй завтрак
 have lunch завтракать (второй раз)

Mm

* magic ['mædʒɪk] волшебство; волшеб-
 ный
 * magician [mæ'dʒɪʃən] волшебник
 * main [meɪn] главный, основной
 make [meɪk] (made [meɪd]) делать
 * make a resolution [ˌrezi'lu:ʃən] принять
 решение, дать себе слово
 * make sure [ʃʊə] убедиться
 man [mæn] (men [men]) 1. мужчина;
 2. человек (люди)

manу [ˈmen] много
 How many? Сколько?

March [mɑ:ʃ] март
 * mask [mɑ:sk] маска
 * match [mætʃ] соответствовать
 matter ['mætə] дело
 What's the matter? В чем дело?

May [meɪ] май
 meal [mi:l] прием пищи, трапеза
 * meaning ['mi:nɪŋ] значение
 meat [mi:t] мясо

* memory ['meməri] память
 merry ['merɪ] веселый
 Merry Christmas! С Рождеством!
 * message ['mesɪdʒ] послание
 * middle ['mɪdl] середина
 in the middle в середине

- * **might** [maɪt] мощь, сила
- with all might** изо всех сил
- milk** [mɪlk] молоко
- * **missing** ['mɪsɪŋ] недостающий, пропущенный
- * **mitten** ['mɪtn] варежка
- * **mixed-up** ['mɪksɪ'ʌp] смешанный
- * **model** ['mɒdl] модель, образец
- * **Monday** ['mʌndɪ] понедельник
- money** ['mʌni] деньги
- monkey** ['mɒŋki] обезьяна
- month** [mʌnθ] месяц
- last month** в прошлом месяце
- next month** в следующем месяце
- moon** [mu:n] луна
- * **more** [mɔ:] больше
- morning** ['mɔ:ɪŋ] утро
- in the morning** утром
- morning exercises** утренняя зарядка
- mother** ['mʌðə] мама
- mountain** ['maʊntɪn] гора
- mouse** [maʊs] (**mice** [maɪs]) мышь (мыши)
- mouth** [maʊθ] рот
- * **Mr = mister** ['mɪstə] мистер
- much** [mʌʃ] много
- Mum** [mʌm] мамочка
- * **mushroom** ['mʌʃrʊm] гриб
- must** [mʌst] должен
- my** [maɪ] мой
- name** [neɪm] имя
- * **national** ['næʃənl] национальный

- nature** ['neɪtʃə] природа
- near** [nɪə] возле, близко
- * **nearest and dearest** ['neɪst ənd 'deəst] самые близкие и дорогие
- neck** [nek] шея
- need** [ni:d] нужда
- in need** в нужде
- * **newer** ['nju:ə] племянник
- new** [nju:] новый
- New Year** Новый год
- Happy New Year!** С Новым годом!
- next** [nekst] следующий
- nice** [naɪs] хороший, приятный, милый, главный
- * **niece** [ni:s] племянница
- night** [naɪt] ночь
- Goodnight!** Спокойной ночи!
- nine** [naɪn] девять
- nineteen** [ˌnaɪn'ti:n] девятнадцать
- ninety** ['naɪntɪ] девяносто
- ninth** [naɪnθ] девятый
- no** [nəʊ] нет
- nobody** ['nɒbdɪ] никто
- * **north** [nɔ:θ] север
- nose** [nəʊz] нос
- not** [nɒt] не, нет
- Not at all.** Не стоит благодарности.
- * **not less** ['nɒt 'les] не менее
- nothing** ['nʌθɪŋ] ничто
- November** [nəʊ'vembə] ноябрь
- now** [naʊ] сейчас
- number** ['nʌmbə] число, числительное

ocean ['əʊ(ə)n] океан
o'clock [ə'klɒk]

at ... o'clock в ... часов
It's ... o'clock. ... часов.

October [ɒk'təʊbə] октябрь
of course [əv 'kɔ:s] конечно

* office ['ɒfɪs] учреждение
often ['ɒfn] часто

OK ['əʊkeɪ] хорошо, ладно, илет
old [əʊld] старый

one [wʌn] один
only ['əʊnli] только

open ['əʊpən] открывать
opposite ['ɒpəzɪt] противоположный

or [ɔ:] или
* orange ['ɒrɪndʒ] апельсин

* order ['ɔ:də] порядок
in order в порядке

out-of-order не в порядке
* other ['ʌðə] другой

our [aʊə] наш
* out-of-doors [aʊtəv'dɔ:z] на свежем воз-
духе

over ['əʊvə] за, через
over there там

overcoat ['əʊvəkəʊt] пальто
* own [əʊn] собственный

PP

* pair [peɪ] пара
parents ['peərənts] родители

* park [pɑ:k] парк
parrot ['pærət] попугай

* partner ['pɑ:tnə] партнер, напарник
party ['pɑ:ti] вечер, вечеринка
birthday party вечер по случаю дня
рождения
New Year party новогодний вечер

pass [pɑ:s] передать
* past [pɑ:st] прошедший

* pattern ['pætən] образец
* peck [pek] клевать

* people ['pi:pl] люди
* perhaps [pə'haeps] вероятно

pet [pet] любимое домашнее животное
* pick up ['pɪk 'ʌp] подбирать
* picture ['pɪktʃə] картина, картинка, ри-
сунк

rig [rɪg] свинья
pilot ['pɪlət] пилот, летчик
rity ['rɪti] жалость; жалеть

What a pity! Как жаль!
* pizza ['pɪtsə] пицца
* place [pleɪs] место
* plan [plæn] план

plane [pleɪn] самолет
* planet ['plænet] планета
plant [plɑ:nt] растение

play [pleɪ] играть
please [pli:z] пожалуйста
pleasure ['pleʒə] удовольствие

with great pleasure с большим удо-
вольствием
* plural ['plʊərəl] множественное число
rocket ['rɒkɪt] карман

* poem ['pəʊm] стихотворение
* point [pɔɪnt] указать (на)

- * popular ['pɒpjələ] популярный
- porridge ['pɒrɪdʒ] каша
- * possible ['pɒsəbl] возможный
- It's possible. Возможно.
- potato [pə'teɪtəʊ] картошка
- present ['prezənt] подарок
- * pretend [prɪ'tend] притворяться, делать вид
- * pretty ['prɪtɪ] хорошенький, прелестный
- * previous ['pri:vjəs] предыдущий
- promise ['prɒmɪs] обещание
- * pronounce [prɒ'naʊns] произносить
- * prove [pru:v] доказывать
- * proverb ['prɒvə:b] пословица
- * pudding ['pu:dɪŋ] пуддинг
- * putterkin ['pʌt(p)kɪn] тыква
- purry ['pʊəri] шенок
- put [pʊt] (put [pʊt]) класть, положить
- put in вставдять
- put off откладывать
- put on надевать
- * puzzle ['pʌzl] загадка, головоломка

- * question ['kwɛstʃn] вопрос
- quick [kwɪk] быстрый
- quickly ['kwɪklɪ] быстро
- * quiet ['kwaɪət] спокойный, тихий

- * rabbit ['ræbɪt] кролик
- rain [reɪn] дождь

- It rains. Идет дождь.
- raincoat ['reɪnkəʊt] плащ
- read [ri:d] (read [red]) читать
- * read to yourself [rɪ:'self] читай про себя

- * ready ['redi] готовый
- * really ['ri:əlɪ] действительно
- * recite [rɪ'saɪt] декламировать
- red [red] красный
- * refer (to) [rɪ'fɜ:] отсылать (к)
- * relative ['relatɪv] родственник
- * remember [rɪ'membə] помнить
- * resolution [ˌrezəlu:ʃn] решение
- make a resolution принять решение, дать себе слово
- * rhyming ['raɪmɪŋ] рифмующийся
- * riddle ['rɪdl] загадка
- * ride [raɪd] ехать верхом
- right [raɪt] правый; правильный
- river ['rɪvə] река
- * roast [rəʊst] жареный
- * role-play ['rəʊl,pleɪ] разыгрывать по ролям
- * Rome [rəʊm] Рим
- * room [ru:m] комната
- run [rʌn] (ran [ræn]) бегать
- run a race [reɪs] соревноваться в беге
- Russian ['rʌʃn] русский

- * sailor ['seɪlə] моряк
- * salad ['sæləd] салат
- salt [sɔ:lt] соль

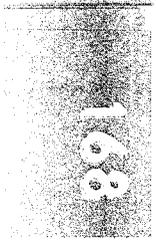
* **(the) same** [seɪm] тот же самый
Saturday ['sætədi] суббота
 * **say** [seɪ] (**said** [sed]) сказать
school [sku:l] школа
at school в школе
go to school ходить в школу
sea [si:] море
season ['si:z(ə)n] сезон, время года
second ['sekənd] второй
 * **secret** ['sɪkri] секрет; секретный
see [si:] (**saw** [sɔ:]) видеть
 * **seed** [si:d] зернышко
send [send] (**sent** [sent]) посылать
 * **sentence** ['sentəns] предложение
September [sep'tembə] сентябрь
seven ['sevən] семь
seventeen [sev'n'ti:n] семнадцать
seventh ['sevnt̪] седьмой
seventy ['sevntɪ] семьдесят
 * **shake** [ʃeɪk] (**shook** [ʃʊk]) трясти
shampoo [ʃə'mu:] кислота
 * **sharp** [ʃɑ:p] острый
she [ʃi:] она
sheep [ʃi:p] овца, овцы
 * **shine** [ʃaɪn] (**shone** [ʃɒn]) светить
shirt [ʃɜ:t] рубашка
shoe [ʃu:] туфля
shop [ʃɒp] магазин
go shopping ходить за покупками
 * **shop assistant** [ə'sɪst(ə)nt] продавец
short [ʃɔ:t] короткий
shorts [ʃɔ:ts] шорты
shoulder [ʃəʊldə] плечо
 * **show** [ʃəʊ] (**showed** [ʃəʊd]) показы-
 вать
 * **sight** [saɪt] зрелище, вид

* **sign** [saɪn] подписывать
 * **silly** ['sɪli] глупый
 * **sing** [sɪŋ] (**sang** [sæŋ]) петь
sister ['sɪstə] сестра
 * **sit** [sɪt] (**sat** [sæt]) сидеть
six [sɪks] шесть
sixteen [sɪks'ti:n] шестнадцать
sixth [sɪksθ] шестой
sixty ['sɪksti] шестьдесят
size [saɪz] размер
the right size нужный размер
What size (shoes) do you wear? Какого
 размера туфли вы носите?
skate [skeɪt] кататься на коньках
ski [ski:] кататься на лыжах
skip [skɪp] скакать через веревочку
skirt [skɜ:t] юбка
 * **sky** [skaɪ] небо
sledge [sledʒ] кататься на санках
 * **sleep** [sli:p] (**slept** [slept]) спать
slow [sləʊ] медленный
slowly ['sləʊli] медленно
 * **small** [smɔ:l] маленький
 * **smell** [smel] пахнуть; запах
 * **smile** [smɪl] улыбаться
 * **snake** [sneɪk] змея
snow [snəʊ] снег
It snows. Идет снег.
snowball ['snəʊbɔ:l] снежок
play snowballs играть в снежки
 * **solve** [sɒlv] решать
some [sʌm] несколько, немного
some of us некоторые из нас
somebody [ˈsʌmbɒdi] кто-то
something [ˈsʌmθɪŋ] что-то
sometimes [ˈsʌmtaɪmz] иногда

son [sʌn] сын
 * **song** [sɒŋ] песня
soon [su:n] скоро
sorry ['sɒri] огорченный, сожалеющий
I'm sorry. Мне жаль. (Простите!)
I'm sorry to hear that. Мне жаль слышать это.
 * **sound** [saʊnd] звук
soup [su:p] суп
south [saʊθ] юг
spaghetti [spə'geti] спагетти, макаронны
speak [spi:k] (**spoke** [spɔ:k]) говорить
 * **speech** [spi:tʃ] речь
sport [spɔ:t] спорт
sports game [geɪm] спортивная игра
sports ground [graʊnd] спортивная площадка
spring [sprɪŋ] весна
stadium ['steɪdiəm] стадион
stand [stænd] (**stood** [stʊd]) стоять
star [stɑ:] звезда
 * **start** [stɑ:t] старт; начало; начинать
 * **statement** ['steɪtmənt] утверждение, заявление
 * **stay** [steɪ] оставаться
 * **stick** [stɪk] палка, прутик
still [stɪl] все еще
stocking ['stɒkɪŋ] чулок
 * **stomach** ['stʌmk] желудок
stomachache ['stʌmʌkeɪk] боль в животе
street [stri:t] улица
 * **strike** [straɪk] пробить
 * **suddenly** ['sʌdnli] вдруг

suit [sju:t] подходить, быть к лицу
It suits you well. Тебе это очень идет (тебе к лицу).
 * **sum up** ['sʌm 'ʌp] суммировать, резюмировать
 * **summary** ['sʌməri] краткое изложение
summer ['sʌmə] лето
 * **sun** [sʌn] солнце
 * **Sunday** ['sʌndi] воскресенье
supper ['sʌpə] ужин
for supper на ужин
have supper ужинать
 * **surprise** [sə'praɪz] сюрприз
sweater ['swetə] свитер
sweet [swi:t] конфета; сладкий
 * **have a sweet tooth** быть сластеной
swim [swɪm] (**swam** [swæm]) плавать
swimming pool ['swɪmɪŋ pu:l] бассейн

table ['teɪbl] стол; таблица
table tennis настольный теннис
play table tennis играть в настольный теннис
tag [tæɡ] игра в салочки
play tag играть в салочки
tail [teɪl] хвост
take [teɪk] (**took** [tʊk]) брать, взять
take a shower ['ʃəʊə] принимать душ
 * **take care (of)** [keə] заботиться о
take off снимать
tale [teɪl] сказка
 * **talk** [tɔ:k] беседа; беседовать



tasty ['teɪstɪ] вкусный
 tea [ti:] чай
 teach [ti:tʃ] (taught [tɔ:t]) учить, обу-
 чать
 * **teach a lesson** ['ti:f ə 'lesn] проучить
 teacher ['ti:tʃə] учитель
 teeth [ti:θ] см. **tooth**
 ten [ten] десять
 tennis ['tenɪs] теннис
 tenth [tenθ] десятый
 test yourself ['test jɔ:'self] проверь се-
 бя
 thanks [θæŋks] спасибо
 thank you спасибо
 that [ðæt] тот, та, то
 that's why ['ðætz 'waɪ] вот почему
 * **theatre** ['θi:ətə] театр
 their [ðeə] их
 them [ðem] их (кого? кому?)
 then [ðen] затем, потом
 these [ði:z] эти
 they [ðei] они
 thing [θɪŋ] вещь, предмет
 * **Poor thing!** ['pʊə 'θɪŋ] Бедняжка!
 think [θɪŋk] (thought [θɔ:t]) думать
 third [θɜ:d] третий
 thirsty ['θɜ:sti] испытывающий жажду
 I'm thirsty. Я хочу пить.
 thirteen [ˌθɜ:ˈti:n] тринадцать
 thirty ['θɜ:ti] тридцать
 this [ðɪs] этот, эта, это
 those [ðəʊz] те
 three [θri:] три
 tiger ['taɪgə] тигр
 tights [taɪts] колготки, трико
 till [tɪl] до

time [taɪm] время
 Can you tell me the time, please? Ска-
 жите, пожалуйста, который час?
 It's time to ... Пора ...
 What's the time? Какой час?
 * **title** ['taɪtl] заглавие, название
 * **toast** [təʊst] поджаренный ломтик хле-
 ба
 today [tə'deɪ] сегодня
 toe [təʊ] палец на ноге
 * **together** [tə'geðə] вместе
 tomorrow [tə'mɒrəʊ] завтра
 too [tu:] тоже, также
 tooth [tu:θ] (teeth [ti:θ]) зуб (зубы)
 have a sweet tooth быть сластенной
 * **toothache** ['tu:θeɪk] зубная боль
 * **topic** ['tɒpɪk] тема
 tortoise ['tɔ:tɔɪs] черепаха
 * **town** [taʊn] город
 in town в городе
 toy [tɔɪ] игрушка
 * **tradition** [trə'dɪʃn] традиция
 * **train** [treɪn] тренировать(ся)
 * **treat** [tri:t] угощение; угощать
 tree [tri:] дерево
 * **trick** [trɪk] трюк, фокус, шутка, ша-
 лость
 trousers ['traʊzəz] брюки
 * **true** [tru:] верный, правдивый, прав-
 дивый
 * **try** [traɪ] пытаться, стараться
 try again [ə'geɪn] попробуй опять
 try on примерять
 * **turkey** ['tɜ:kɪ] индейка
 * **turn** [tɜ:n] превращать(ся)
twelfth [twelfθ] двенадцатый

- twelve [twelv] двенадцать
 twenty [ˈtwenti] двадцать
 * twin [twɪn] одинаковый, составляющий пару
 two [tu:] два

Uu

- * umbrella [ʌmˈbrɛlə] зонт
 uncle [ˈʌŋkl] дядя
 under [ˈʌndə] под
 * underlined [ˌʌndəˈlaɪnd] подчеркнутый
 * understand [ˌʌndəˈstænd] (understood [ˌʌndəˈstʊd]) понимать
 * use [ju:] употреблять, использовать
 usually [ˈju:ʒʊəli] обычно

Vv

- vegetable [ˈvedʒ(ə)bəl] овощ
 * verb [vɜ:b] глагол
 very [ˈveri] очень
 * violet [ˈvaɪəlet] фиалка
 visit [ˈvɪzɪt] навещать
 volleyball [ˈvɒlbɔ:l] волейбол
 play volleyball играть в волейбол

Ww

- want [wɒnt] хотеть
 warm [wɜ:m] теплый; подогревать
 It's warm. Тепло.
 was [wɒz, wəz] *np. ep. ed. ч. sl. to be*
 wash [wɒʃ] мыть(ся)

- wash *np* [ˈwɒʃ ˈɑ:p] мыть посуду
 * watch [wɒtʃ] наблюдать
 watch TV смотреть телевизор
 * water [ˈwɔ:tə] вода
 * way [weɪ] путь, способ; обычай, привычка

on the way (to) по дороге в
 the way she does it как она это делает

- we [wi:] мы
 wear [weə] (wore [wɔ:ɹ]) быть одетым, носить одежду
 weather [ˈweðə] погода
 How's the weather? Какая погода?
 week [wi:k] неделя

last week на прошлой неделе
 next week на будущей неделе
 weekend [ˌwi:k'end] конец недели
 well [wel] хорошо; колодец
 very well очень хорошо

- were [wɜ:, wə] *np. ep. мн. ч. sl. to be*
 * west [west] запад
 what [wɒt] что
 * whatever [wɒt'evə] все, что ..., что бы ни

- where [weə] где, куда
 * wherever [weə'evə] где бы ни, что бы ни
 which [wɪtʃ] который
 white [waɪt] белый
 who [hu:] кто

- wife [waɪf] (wives [waɪvz]) жена (жены)
 wild [waɪld] дикий
 * window [ˈwɪndəʊ] окно
 * window sill [ˈwɪndəʊsɪl] подоконник
 * winner [ˈwɪnə] победитель

winter [ˈwɪntə] зима
* wish [wɪʃ] желание; желать
with [wɪð] с
with us с нами
without [wɪˈðaʊt] без
wolf [wʊlf] (wolves [wʊlvz]) волк (волки)
woman [ˈwʊmən] (women [ˈwɪmɪn]) жен-
щина (женщины)
wonder [ˈwʌndə] удивляться, интересо-
ваться; чудо
I wonder. Хотелось бы знать. Инте-
ресно.
* wood [wʊd] лес
* word [wɜ:d] слово
* work [wɜ:k] работать
worker [ˈwɜ:kə] рабочий
* world [wɜ:lɪd] мир, вселенная
write [raɪt] (wrote [rəʊt]) писать
* in written form [ɪn ˈrɪtɪn ˈfɔ:m] в
письменной форме
* wrong [rɒŋ] неправильный, неверный,
ошибочный

You are wrong. Вы неправы. Вы оши-
баетесь.
What's wrong with it? Что же тут та-
кого?

У

year [jɜ:] год
last year в прошлом году
next year на следующий год
yellow [ˈjeləʊ] желтый
yes [jes] да
yesterday [ˈjestədi] вчера
* yet [jet] все еще, однако
you [ju:] ты, вы
your [jɔ:] твой, наш

У

* zoo [zu:] зоопарк

Irregular Verbs¹

be [bi:]	was [wɒz], were [wɜ:]	быть, находиться
become [br'kʌm]	became [br'keɪm]	становиться, превращаться
begin [br'gɪn]	began [br'geɪn]	начинать
bring [brɪŋ]	brought [brɔ:t]	приносить
build [bɪld]	built [bɪlt]	строить
buy [baɪ]	bought [bɔ:t]	покупать
catch [kæʃ]	caught [kɔ:t]	поймать, схватить
choose [tʃu:z]	chose [tʃɔ:z]	выбирать
do [du:]	did [dɪd]	делать
draw [drɔ:]	drew [dru:]	рисовать
drink [drɪŋk]	drank [dræŋk]	пить
feel [fi:l]	felt [felt]	чувствовать
fight [faɪt]	fought [fɔ:t]	сражаться, бороться
find [faɪnd]	found [faʊnd]	находить, обнаруживать
fly [flaɪ]	flew [flu:]	летать
forget [fə'get]	forgot [fə'gɒt]	забывать
get [get]	got [gɒt]	получать, доставать
give [gɪv]	gave [geɪv]	давать
go [gəʊ]	went [went]	идти, уходить
grow [grəʊ]	grew [gru:]	расти
have [hæv]	had [hæd]	иметь, обладать
keep [ki:p]	kept [keɪpt]	держатъ, хранить
know [nəʊ]	knew [nju:]	знать

¹ Irregular Verbs — Неправильные глаголы

learn [lɜ:n]	learnt [lɜ:nt] (learned)	изучать, учить
make [meɪk]	made [meɪd]	делать, изготовивать
mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	иметь в виду
meet [mi:t]	met [met]	встречать
put [pʊt]	put [pʊt]	класть, положить
read [ri:d]	read [red]	читать
run [rʌn]	ran [ræn]	бегать
say [seɪ]	said [sed]	сказать
see [si:]	saw [sɔ:]	видеть
send [send]	sent [sent]	посылать
set [set]	set [set]	ставить, помещать
shake [ʃeɪk]	shook [ʃʊk]	трясти, качать
shine [ʃaɪn]	shone [ʃɒn]	светить, блеснуть
sing [sɪŋ]	sang [sæŋ]	петь
speak [spi:k]	spoke [spʊk]	говорить
spend [spend]	spent [spent]	тратить
stand [stænd]	stood [stʊd]	стоять
swim [swɪm]	swam [swæm]	плавать
take [teɪk]	took [tʊk]	брать
teach [ti:tʃ]	taught [tɔ:t]	учить, преподавать
tell [tel]	told [təʊld]	сказать
think [θɪŋk]	thought [θɔ:t]	думать
understand [ˌʌndə'stænd]	understood [ˌʌndə'stʊd]	понимать
wear [weə]	wore [wɔ:]	носить (одежду)
win [wɪn]	won [wɒn]	выигрывать, победить
write [raɪt]	wrote [rəʊt]	писать

Contents

PETS AND OTHER ANIMALS

Lesson 45	4
Lesson 46	4
Lesson 47. Listening Comprehension Lesson	9
Lesson 48. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 49. Lesson 9 for Home Reading	
Lesson 50. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 51	
Lesson 52	15
Lesson 53	21
Lesson 54. Review 3	27
Lesson 55. <i>Optional</i>	34
Lesson 56. Listening Comprehension Lesson	
Lesson 57. Lesson 10 for Home Reading	
Lesson 58. <i>Optional</i>	

CLOTHING

Lesson 59	40
Lesson 60	45
Lesson 61	50
Lesson 62	54
Lesson 63. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 64. Listening Comprehension Lesson	
Lesson 65. Lesson 11 for Home Reading	
Lesson 66. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 67	59
Lesson 68	65
Lesson 69	71
Lesson 70	76
Lesson 71. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 72. Listening Comprehension Lesson	
Lesson 73. Review 4	81

Lesson 74. Lesson 12 for Home Reading	
Lesson 75. <i>Optional</i>	

Lesson 76	87
Lesson 77	92

THE ENGLISH YEAR

Lesson 78	96
Lesson 79	101
Lesson 80. <i>Optional</i>	106
Lesson 81	112
Lesson 82	117
Lesson 83	
Lesson 84. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 85. Listening Comprehension Lesson	
Lesson 86. <i>Review 5</i>	122
Lesson 87. Lesson 13 for Home Reading	
Lesson 88. Lesson 14 for Home Reading	

NATURE

Lesson 89	126
Lesson 90	129
Lesson 91	133
Lesson 92. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 93. Listening Comprehension Lesson	
Lesson 94. <i>Review 6</i>	138
Lesson 95. Lesson 15 for Home Reading	
Lesson 96. Lesson 16 for Home Reading	
Lesson 97. <i>Optional</i>	
Lesson 98. Listening Comprehension Lesson	
Lesson 99. <i>Optional</i>	

Puzzle Time: Keys	142
Reference Grammar	144
English-Russian Vocabulary	155
Irregular Verbs	172